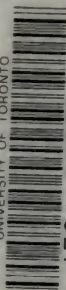


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00875648 8

# OTTOMAN - TURKISH LANGUAGE

J. W. REDHOUSE



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

~~cc~~

~~cc~~

~~cc~~

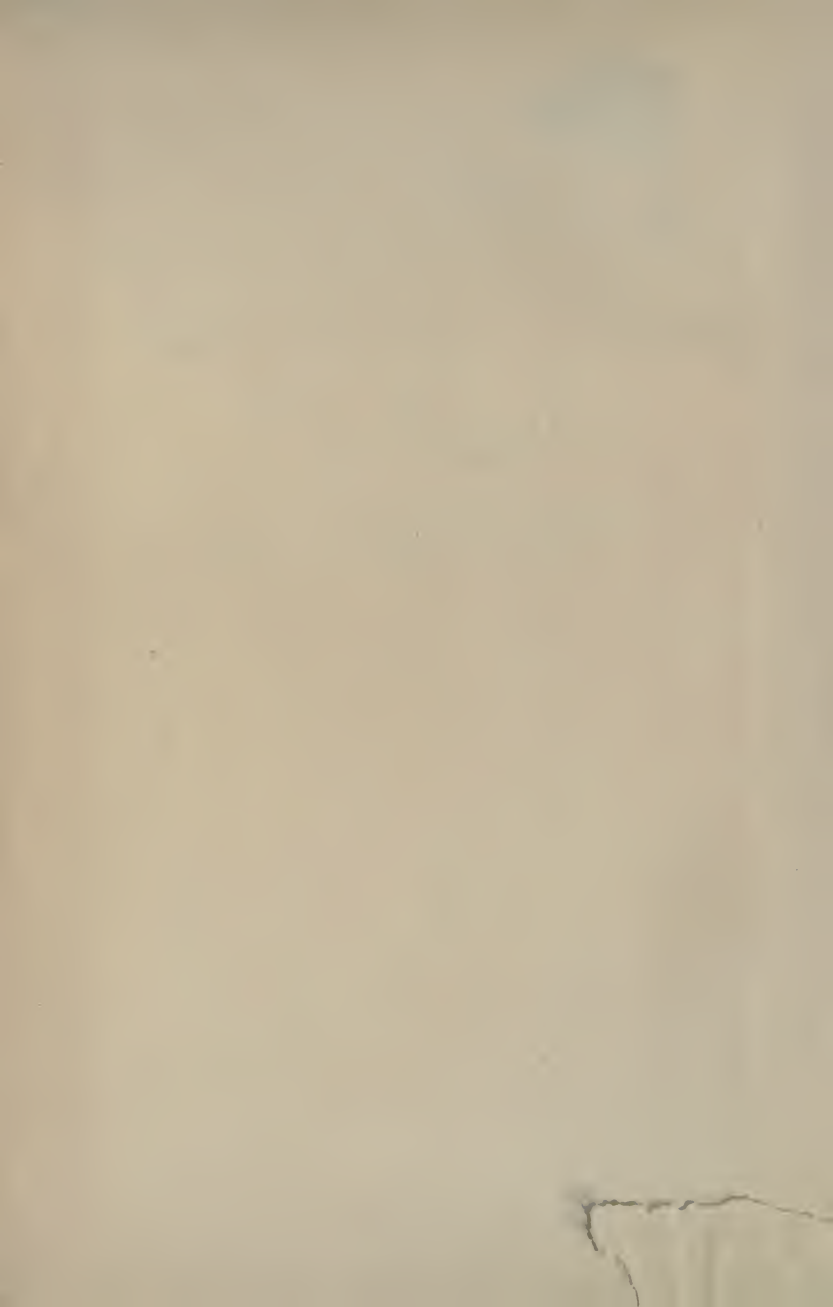
R. ARE

---

Aggesthman

---

Toronto, 28th March 1968





TRÜBNER'S COLLECTION  
OF  
SIMPLIFIED GRAMMARS  
OF THE PRINCIPAL  
ASIATIC AND EUROPEAN LANGUAGES.

EDITED BY  
REINHOLD ROST, LL.D., PH.D.

---

IX.  
OTTOMAN TURKISH.  
BY J. W. REDHOUSE.

TRÜBNER'S COLLECTION OF SIMPLIFIED GRAMMARS OF THE  
PRINCIPAL ASIATIC AND EUROPEAN LANGUAGES.

EDITED BY REINHOLD ROST, LL.D., PH.D.

I.

**HINDUSTANI, PERSIAN,  
AND ARABIC.**

BY THE LATE  
E. H. PALMER, M.A.

*Price 5s.*

II.

**HUNGARIAN.**

BY I. SINGER.

*Price 4s. 6d.*

III.

**BASQUE.**

BY W. VAN EYS.

*Price 3s. 6d.*

IV.

**MALAGASY.**

BY G. W. PARKER.

*Price 5s.*

V.

**MODERN GREEK.**

BY E. M. GELDART, M.A.

*Price 2s. 6d.*

VI.

**ROUMANIAN.**

BY R. TORCEANU.

*Price 5s.*

VII.

**TIBETAN.**

BY H. A. JASCHKE.

*Price 5s.*

VIII.

**DANISH.**

BY E. C. OTTÉ.

*Price 3s. 6d.*

IX.

**OTTOMAN TURKISH.**

BY J. W. REDHOUSE.

*Price 10s. 6d.*

---

*Grammars of the following are in preparation :—*

Albanese, Anglo-Saxon, Assyrian, Bohemian, Bulgarian, Burmese,  
Chinese, Cymric and Gaelic, Dutch, Egyptian, Finnish, Hebrew,  
Kurdish, Malay, Pali, Polish, Russian, Sanskrit, Serbian, Siamese,  
Singhalese, Swedish, &c., &c., &c.

LONDON: TRÜBNER & CO., LUDGATE HILL.

A  
SIMPLIFIED GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
OTTOMAN-TURKISH LANGUAGE.  
I

BY  
J. W. REDHOUSE, M.R.A.S.,  
HON. MEMBER OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF LITERATURE

LONDON:  
TRÜBNER & CO., LUDGATE HILL.  
—  
1884.

[*All rights reserved.*]

SEEN BY  
PRESERVATION  
SERVICES

DATE..... JAN 20 1994.....

PL  
123  
R5

LONDON:

GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, LIMITED,  
ST. JOHN'S SQUARE, CLERKENWELL ROAD.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Preface . . . . .	ix
Note on Identity of Alphabets . . . . .	xii

### CHAPTER I.

#### LETTERS AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

SECTION I.	Number, Order, Forms, and Names of Letters . . . . .	1
	Synopsis of Arabic, Greek, and Latin Letters . . . . .	4
„	II. Phonetic Values of Letters, Vowel-Points, Orthographic Signs, Transliteration, Ottoman Euphony . . . . .	15

### CHAPTER II.

#### OTTOMAN ACCIDENCE.

SECTION I.	Nouns Substantive . . . . .	51
„	II. Nouns Adjective . . . . .	68
„	III. Numerals . . . . .	74
„	IV. Pronouns . . . . .	82

	PAGE
SECTION V. Demonstratives . . . . .	88
„ VI. Interrogatives . . . . .	89
„ VII. Relative Pronouns . . . . .	90
„ VIII. Derivation of Verbs . . . . .	92
„ „ (Table) . . . . .	94
„ IX. Conjugation of Verbs ; Moods ; Tenses ; Participles ; Verbal Nouns ; Gerunds .	99
„ X. Numbers and Persons . . . . .	115
„ XI. Complex Categories of Verbs . . . . .	119
„ XII. First Complex Category . . . . .	120
„ XIII. Second „ „ . . . . .	125
„ XIV. Third „ „ . . . . .	129
„ XV. Combined (Turkish) Conjugation . . . . .	133
„ XVI. Negative and Impotential Conjugations .	135
„ XVII. Dubitative, Potential, and Facile Verbs .	141
„ XVIII. Verb Substantive . . . . .	144
„ XIX. Verbs of Presence and Absence, Existence and Non-Existence . . . . .	147
„ XX. Compound Verbs . . . . .	148
„ XXI. Interrogative Verbs ; Interrogation .	151
„ XXII. Adverbial Expressions . . . . .	154
„ XXIII. Prepositions . . . . .	156
„ XXIV. Conjunctions . . . . .	156
„ XXV. Interjections . . . . .	157

## CHAPTER III.

## THE OTTOMAN SYNTAX.

	PAGE
SECTION I. Conversational brevity. — Precision in writing. . . . .	158
„ II. Syntax of Substantives . . . . .	161
„ III. „ Adjectives . . . . .	168
„ IV. „ Numerals . . . . .	170
„ V. „ Pronouns . . . . .	173
„ VI. „ Verbs . . . . .	174
„ VII. „ the Participle . . . . .	178
„ VIII. „ the Verbal Nouns and Infinitive	179
„ IX. „ the Gerunds . . . . .	181
„ X. „ the Adverb . . . . .	182
„ XI. „ the Preposition . . . . .	184
„ XII. „ the Conjunction . . . . .	185
„ XIII. „ the Interjection . . . . .	191
Addendum, on suppressed letter , . . . .	193
Index . . . . .	195

# ERRATA.

PAGE					
10,	l. 22,	for	مَدَّ	read	مَدَّ
16,	l. 18,	after	لُ	„	&c.
24,	l. 15,	for	أَبَّ	„	أَبَّ
28,	l. 4,	„	جَزَمَ	„	جَزَمَ
29,	l. 2,	„	پَرَسَ	„	پَرَسَ
„	l. 9,	„	شَدَّتْ	„	شَدَّتْ
„	l. 9,	„	مَدَّ - عَطَّار	„	مَدَّ - عَطَّار
„	l. 10,	„	وَدَّ	„	وَدَّ
„	l. 16,	„	عَطَّارٌ، بِقَالَ	„	عَطَّارٌ، بِقَالَ
30,	l. 1,	„	پَرَّ	„	پَرَّ
31,	l. 19,	„	رَأْسَ	„	رَأْسَ
35,	l. 2,	„	ابتدا	„	اِبْتَدَا
47,	last line,	„	أَ	„	ا
54,	l. 18,	„	رَوَّيَانْ	„	رَوَّيَانْ
91,	l. 10,	„	VIII.... Verb	„	IX.... Conjugation, p. 100
124,	last line,	„	اُولِيحَقِّ	„	اُولِيحَقِّ
127,	first line,	„	تَمَشَّ	„	تَمَشَّ
154,	l. 3,	add:	(See p. 73, l. 4.)		
168,	l. 7,	for	جَنَابَرِي	read	جَنَابَرِي
In pp. 10—16		„	,	„	,



## P R E F A C E.

---

THE Ottoman Language, عُثْمَانِيَّة *ösmānlîjâ*, is the most highly polished branch of the great Turkish tongue, which is spoken, with dialectic variations, across the whole breadth, nearly, of the middle region of the continent of Asia, impinging into Europe, even, in the Ottoman provinces, and also, in Southern Russia, up to the frontiers of the old kingdom of Poland.

The Ottoman language is, in its grammar and vocabulary, fundamentally Turkish. It has, however, adopted, and continues more and more to adopt, as required, a vast number of Arabic, Persian, and foreign words (Greek, Armenian, Slavonic, Hungarian, Italian, French, English, &c.), together with the use of a few of the grammatical rules of the Arabic and Persian, which are given as Turkish rules in the following pages, their origin being in each case specified.

The great Turkish language, تَرْكِيَّة *türkîjê*, Ottoman and non-Ottoman, has been classed by European writers as one of the "agglutinative" languages ; not inflecting its words, but

“glueing on,” as it were, particles, “which were once independent words,” to the root-words, and thus forming all the grammatical and derivative desinenes in use.

To my mind, this term “*agglutinative*,” and its definition, are inapplicable to the Turkish language in general, and to the Ottoman Turkish in particular. These are, essentially and most truly, inflexional tongues; none of their inflexions ever having been “independent words,” but modifying particles only.

The distinctive character of all the Turkish languages, or dialects, is that the root of a whole family, however numerous, of inflexions and derivations, is always recognizable at sight, seldom suffering any modification whatever, and always standing at the head of the inflexions or derivations, however complex in character these may be. When a modification of a root-word does take place, it is always of the simplest kind, always the softening of a hard or sharp consonant into the corresponding more liquid letter, and always of the final consonant only of the root. Thus, a ت or ط sometimes becomes a د, a ق becomes a غ, a sharp Arabic ك becomes a soft Persian ک, or the Ottoman modification of this latter, which is then pronounced like our most useful consonant *y*, or, in case of a dominant *o* or *u* vowel in the root, is pronounced like our consonant *w*.

The Ottoman Turkish has more vowel-sounds (eleven in number) than any other tongue known to me. As each of these may have a short and a long modification, they make twenty-two possible vowels in all. Every one of these is distinguished by a special mark in the transliterations of the present treatise, though it is impossible to attempt any such differentiation in the Arabic characters to which the Ottoman language is wedded.

The rules of enphony regulate the pronunciation of every word in the Ottoman language; perfectly, in all of Turkish origin; and as far as is practicable, in what is radically foreign.

Although a compound word is a thing totally unknown to the Turkish dialects, and of very rare occurrence in Arabic, the Ottoman language abounds with such, adopted from the Aryan, compounding Persian.

Persian grammarians and writers first learnt how to mould into a harmonious whole the incongruous Aryan Persian and Semitic Arabic elements. Ottoman ingenuity has gone a step further, and blended in one noble speech the three conflicting elements of the Aryan, Semitic and Turanian classes of vocables.

Fault is found by some with this intermixture of idioms;

but an Englishman, of all the world, will know how to appreciate a clever mosaic of diction; and a real student of the language will learn to admire many a true beauty, resulting from a masterly handling of the materials at his command, by any first-rate Ottoman literary celebrity, whether prose-writer or poet.

---

NOTE.—The manuscript of the present sketch Grammar was completed before Christmas, 1882, and copies of my table of identic alphabets have been in the hands of a few friends for the last four or five years. I have just had the pleasure and privilege of reading the admirable and exhaustive treatise on "The Alphabet," by the Rev. Isaac Taylor, and am rejoiced to find that he has come to the same conclusion as to the identity of the three; probably at an earlier date than the time, perhaps twenty years ago, when the idea began to force itself on my mind. I still feel inclined, however, to hold by the inference that the Phenicians gave the alphabet to Italy, quite independently of the Greek action which later on doubtlessly influenced the Italian culture.

LONDON,  
*September, 1883.*

J. W. R.

# OTTOMAN TURKISH GRAMMAR.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### THE LETTERS AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

#### SECTION I. *The Number, Order, Forms, and Names of the Letters.*

THERE are thirty-one distinct letters used in the Ottoman language. Some of these have more than one value; and four of them are sometimes consonants, sometimes vowels. There is also a combination of two letters into one character, *Y* or *Ý*, *lá*, which Arabian piety has agreed to count as a letter, and which Persian and Turkish conformity has had no option but to adopt. Thirty-two letters have, therefore, to be named and enumerated, as follows:—

ا *êlîf*, ب *bê*, پ *pê*, ت *tê*, ث *sê*, ج *jîm*, چ *chîm*, ح *hâ*, خ *khî*,  
د *dâî*, ذ *zê*, ر *rî*, ز *zê*, ژ *zhê*, س *sî*, ش *shî*, ص *sâd*, ض *dâd*,  
ط *tî*, ظ *zî*, ع *'âyn*, غ *gâyn*, ف *fê*, ق *qâf*, ك *kâf*, ل *lâm*, م *mîm*,  
ن *nûn*, و *wôv*, ه *hê*, لا *lâm-êlîf*, ی *yê*.

The foregoing is the ordinary arrangement of the letters of the Ottoman alphabet, as learnt and repeated by children;

excepting that they are not at first taught to mention, or to know, either of the three Persian letters, پ *pè*, چ *chlm*, and ژ *zhè*, which are not contained in the Arabic alphabet, their sounds and values being unknown to, and unpronounceable by, an Arab. It is called the *èlîf-bè*, الف به, i.e., *the alphabet*; and it might be conveniently styled the *alphabet by forms*; letters of the same form being brought together in it, more or less.

There is another very different order necessary to be learnt of the twenty-nine Arabic letters. It is called *èbjèd*, اَبْجَد, and is arranged in eight conventional words, as follows: اَبْجَد *èbjèd*, هَوَاز *hèvwâz*, حُطَّى *hùttî*, كَلَمَنَّ *kèlémân*, سَعَفَص *sà'fâs*, قَرَشَتْ *qârâshât*, نَحْذ *sâkhâz*, ضَظَعَلَا *dâzâgilâ*.

The letters of the Arabic alphabet, as arranged in this *èbjèd* series, have each a numerical value. The first nine in order represent the nine units, 1 to 9; the second nine stand for the tens, also in order, 10 to 90; the third nine count as the hundreds, serially, 100 to 900; the twenty-eighth in the series, غ, stands for 1000; and the last, لا, though always enumerated, has no value of its own, but counts as the sum of the values of its two components, ل 30, ا 1; i.e., as 31.

This system appears to have been in use in very early times indeed. The order of the letters in it is that of the Hebrew alphabet, as far as this goes; that is, as far as the end of the sixth word *qârâshât*, قَرَشَتْ, with which the Hebrew

alphabet terminates. The letters of the two last words (omitting now all consideration of the factitious  $\text{Y}$ ) are Semitic inventions of a comparatively modern date, and are modifications, by means of dots, of letters, undotted or dotted, represented in the Hebrew alphabet. Thus,  $\text{ث}$  is modified from  $\text{ت}$ ,  $\text{خ}$  is from  $\text{ح}$ ,  $\text{ذ}$  from  $\text{د}$ ,  $\text{ض}$  from  $\text{ص}$ ,  $\text{ط}$  from  $\text{ب}$ , and  $\text{غ}$  from  $\text{ع}$ . This may be called *the numeral alphabet*.

A circumstance that invests this  $\text{ébjèd}$  arrangement with a European antiquarian interest of the very highest order, is the fact that it proves, beyond the remotest shadow of a doubt, the unity of origin of the Semitic (usually taken to be Phœnician, but I imagine it to be much more ancient than Moses, or even Abraham), the Greek, and the Latin alphabets. Not only can the now divergent forms of each separate letter in the series be traced through successive modifications back to one ancient Phœnician character, but the order of the whole series from  $\text{ا}$  to  $\text{ت}$  is absolutely identical in the Arabic (Hebrew, Phœnician), Greek, and Latin alphabets, as the following synopsis shows. An additional proof is furnished by the identity of the numeral values of the letters in the Arabic and Greek alphabets,—a method totally unknown to the Latins, who must have had a method of their own, probably Etruscan, before they received their alphabet direct from the Phœnicians, quite independently of the Greeks, and quite as early.



Arabic.	Greek.	Num.	Latin.	Arabic.	Greek.	Num.	Latin.
ا	A	1	A	ع	O	70	O
ب	B	2	B	ف	Π	80	P
ج	Γ	3	C	ص	-	90	-
د	Δ	4	D				
ه	E	5	E				
و	Ϝ	6	F	ق <sup>1</sup>	100	Φ	90 Q
ز	Z	7	G	ر	200	P	100 R
ح	H	8	H	ش	300	Σ	200 S
ط	Θ	9	-	ت	400	T	300 T
ى	I	10	I	ث	500	Υ	400 U
ك	K	20	K	خ	600	Φ	500 V
ل	Λ	30	L	ذ	700	X	600 X
م	M	40	M	ض	800	Ψ	700 -
ن	N	50	N	ظ	900	Ω	800 Z
س	Ξ	60	-	غ	1000	Ϟ	900 -

The apparent discrepancies and vacancies occurring on comparison of the three alphabets and the series of numerals, are in reality additional proofs of their absolute identity.

The two first letters call for no remark, though it is known to scholars that the Greek B has been degraded in Rumaic into a V, and the so-called modern Greek man is unable to pronounce a *b*, writing it, when necessary,  $\mu\pi$ . This combination in Greek words he reads and pronounces as though it were written  $\mu\beta$ .

---

<sup>1</sup> The Hebrew system is identical with the Arabic as far as its alphabet goes. Thus: ק 100, ר 200, ש 300, ת 400; beyond this the words are written in full. This incident is a condemnation of the Greek system for the higher numbers.



The  $\epsilon$ ,  $\Gamma$ ,  $G$ , must originally have been a *hard g*. In modern Egyptian, as in Hebrew, and in Greek, it is so pronounced, though the rest of Arabia has softened it into the sound of our English *j* or *soft g*, and though the Latins hardened it, apparently, into a *K* value.

The first serious remark is called for on our coming to the change made by both the Greeks and the Latins of the Semitic soft aspirate consonant  $\text{א}$  into their vowel *E*. It would almost seem as though the old Phenicians used that letter as a final vowel, exactly as is done by the Persians and Turks at present. A more remarkable divergency, inexplicable to me, but parallel to the foregoing conversion, is the change made by the Greeks of the Semitic hard aspirate consonant  $\text{ח}$  into their long vowel *H*,  $\eta$ , whereas the Latins preserved the letter as a consonant and as their sole aspirate, under the same written form as that used by the Greeks, *H*, *h*, and which was in reality the Phenician form of the letter.

The next remark is as to the Latin *F*, which the Greeks long ago discarded from their alphabet, after having in the first instance adopted it in its Phenician form  $\text{פ}$ , and used it to represent the numeral 6. After discarding it as a letter, they continued to use it as a numeral, though with a corrupted, cursive form,  $\text{Ϝ}$ , to which they still, to this day, give the Phenician name of *Bāv*,  $\text{בָּ}$ , *wāw*, *vāv*. The Latin modification of its sound, from a *w* or *v* to an *f*, is of no

importance. The Arabs of to-day, having no *v* letter or sound in their language, write the name of Her Majesty the Queen-Empress, *Fiktoriya*.

As the Greek phonetic value of *Z* exactly corresponds to the Semitic power of *z*, their numeral value being identical, and the form of the Latin *G* being merely a modification, one is tempted to imagine that originally the Latin power of this letter was soft *g*, our *j*, perhaps even our *z*. Certain it is that in some dialects of Italian a *z* is used in words where a soft *g* is found in other dialects.

The Greeks made the Semitic *ḡ* into their *Θ*; the Latins, having no such sound, discarded the letter.

The Semitic *ḡ* being both a consonant, like our *y*, and also a long vowel, *ī*, it followed, as a matter of course, that both Greeks and Latins should make it into the vowel *i*. But the Latins preserved its consonantal use also as an initial; though they forgot, or never realized, that it is a consonant in that position. We now use a *y* to express that value; but the Germans have adopted the Latin modification *j* to represent it. Three western letters, *i*, *j*, *y*, are now used for the one Semitic *ḡ*.

The next four letters require no comment; but the Semitic *ṣ* of the eastern Arabs is not a good parallel for the Greek *Ξ*. The Hebrew letter *צ*, that holds its place in the alphabet, is the equivalent of the Arabic *ص*, and the western Arabs of Morocco transpose the *س* and *ص* in their *أبجد*

alphabet, making the fifth word *صعفض*, the letter *ض* being the exact equivalent of the Hebrew *ז* in place and in power. The *ص* is a better representative of *Ξ* than the *س*, but the two sounds are still very remote from one another. I should be inclined to suggest that when the Greek alphabet was formed, the Semitic *ش* held the place afterwards taken by the *ص* and the *س*. The Greek *Ξ* is an attempt to represent our value *sh*, as is seen in the name Xerxes, of which the old Persian was *Khsharsha*. The Latins dropped this letter, whichever it really was.

The conversion of Semitic consonantal *ع* into Greek and Latin vowel *o* is not unnatural. This letter *ع* is absolutely unpronounceable by any other than a Semitic. It is a kind of convulsion in the throat; and as the two aspirates were converted into vowels, so was this guttural. This was so much the more to be expected, as the Semitic letter *ا*, which became Greek and Latin *α*, is also a guttural consonant, serving likewise as a long vowel on occasions. It is the soft guttural, of which the *ع* is the hard parallel; and an *o* may well be looked upon as a hard *α*.

What the Arabians use as *f*, *ف*, is read in Hebrew, as in Greek and Latin, *p*. Even the Arabians, when they have to express a foreign letter, *p*, which they cannot pronounce, write and pronounce it as a *b*, or as *f*. The next letter, *ص* or *ض*, is dropped in both Greek and Latin. It appears never to have been used in Greek, even as a numeral; differing in

that respect from the  $\text{Ϝ}$ . When this latter was dropped as a letter, it was retained, modified, as a numeral. But the omitted letter  $\text{Ϣ}$  became the numeral  $\sigma\acute{\alpha}\mu\pi\iota$ ,  $\text{ϣ}$  representing 900 instead of 90.

From this omission of the  $\text{Ϣ}$  from its proper place in the Greek numerals, a slip of the whole subsequent series became necessary, so that each letter, from  $\text{Ϣ}$ ,  $\text{ϣ}$ ,  $\text{Ϥ}$ , onwards, had a higher numeral value by one degree in the Semitic than its representative had in Greek;  $\text{Ϣ}$  standing for 100, while  $\text{ϣ}$  has the value of 90 only;  $\text{Ϥ}$  represents 200, while  $\text{P}$  stands for 100 only; &c. This slip is very remarkable; it was filled up further on by  $\text{ϣ}$  900.

Although the six "additional" letters of the Semitic and Greek alphabets have no relation to each other as representatives of sound, their numerical value goes on exactly in the same order observed in those of the original series, and with the same slip up to  $\text{Ϥ}$ , representing 1000, while  $\text{ϣ}$  is only 900. On the other hand, however, the three Greek additionals,  $\text{v}$ ,  $\text{ϕ}$ ,  $\text{χ}$ , are evidently the originals in form of the Latin  $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $x$ , and the Semitic  $\text{כ}$  is possibly the original of the Latin  $Z$ . This letter is usually attributed, by ancient and modern authors, to the Greek  $\zeta$ , which it certainly agrees with in shape, though not in sound.

The forms of the Arabic and Persian Ottoman letters given above are those of the isolated characters. They are liable

to various modifications, according to their being initials, medials, or finals, in a combination of written letters.

In the first place, they may, in this respect, be conveniently divided into two classes : those which join on to the following letters in writing a combination, حُرُوفٌ وَصَلِيَّةٌ *hurūfū wāṣliyye*, and those which do not so join, حُرُوفٌ مُنْفَصِلَةٌ *hurūfū munfasila*.

The latter, the less numerous class, are: ا, د, ذ, ر, ز, و, and لَامٌ, وَر, زَاوَز, زَن, رَب, دَج, دَب, أَب, لَا; eight in number; thus,

All the others join, as حَب, حَبْ, جَا, حُج, تَت, يَب, بَت, بَب, بَا, مَج, لَج, كَت, قَت, فَب, عَب, عَا, طَج, طَت, صَت, صَب, سَب, سَا, خَج, يَب, هَا, نَح, &c.

All the letters join on in writing to the character that precedes them (other than to the eight enumerated above) whether they be themselves finals or medials. As finals their forms are as follows: صَح, مَج, شَج, سَت, حَت, حَب, جَب, بَا, تَغ, بَع, بَط, يَط, هَض, نَض, مَش, لَس, كَر, قَر, فَر, غَد, عَد, طَح, ظَلَا, طَى, ضَه, صُو, شَن, سَم, خَل, حَك, جَق, ثَف, سَخَب, سَكَا, مَجَا, بَجَن, شَل, سَتَر, تَهَر, حَبَب, بَاب, are figured thus:

<sup>1</sup> It having been found impracticable to mark in type the varying Ottoman tone-values of the Arabian and Persian long vowels, the student must learn to supply the numbers 1 and 2 over the long-vowel marks. For this purpose, he must apply the rules for the short vowels, according as they follow, or are followed by, a consonant of the soft or hard class. By practice, the correct habit will be thus acquired; the case of the short vowels teaching the tone, which will then be instinctively used when the vowel is long.

نَكَطٌ, ضَقْلٌ, صَفَرٌ, صَعْتٌ, بَعَثٌ, بَطَرٌ, سَطَرٌ, خَضَنٌ, فَصَلٌ, عَشْرٌ, طَسْتُ, كَزَرٌ. Those which do not join are, as medials, thus written: بَابٌ, هَدَرٌ, بَذَلٌ, فَرَطٌ, جَزَمٌ, بَثْرَمَدَةٌ, لَازٌ, صَوْبٌ, بَثْرَمَدَةٌ. Longer combinations vary, *ad infinitum*, as follows: حِرْفَتٌ, رَحْبَرَلِكٌ, أَوْتُورْمَغَلَهْ, كَلَمَلِجَهْ, نَجَاهَلٌ, مَتَنَاطِرٌ, قَايِلُونٌ, مَتَوَسَّطٌ, اِحْتِجَاجٌ, عَدَالَتٌ, پَادِشَاهَانَهْ, قَاضِيعَسْكَرَلِكٌ, &c.

Besides the simple names of the letters hitherto mentioned, most of the characters have other, more complicated appellations.

The *l* is usually called *hèmezè*, هَمْزَه, when a consonant, in an Arabic word; and *èlîfî mêmîdûdè*, أَلِفٍ مَمْدُودَه, *prolonged l*, when it is a long vowel, initial or medial. It can never be a *long final* vowel in an Arabic word, being then always followed by another consonant *hèmezè*; as, جَزَاءٌ *jéza'û*, شَاءَ *shā'û*, &c. It is called *èlîfî mâqsûrè*, أَلِفٍ مَقْصُورَه, *shortened l*, when final. It is then more commonly written *î* in classical Arabic; but by no means always so. In Persian and Turkish, or foreign words, the *l* is always a vowel, but is called indifferently *èlf* and *hèmezè*. It is always long in Persian words, when medial or final. When initial in a Persian word, it may be short or long. When a long initial, it is distinguished, as in Arabic, by the sign *mèdd*, مَدَّ (ـَ) over it, as: A. آفَتْ *āfèt*, P. آبٌ *āb*. When a short initial, it is, in Arabic, generally a consonant, and may take the sound 'ā or 'è, of 'l,



or of 'û. When a short initial in Persian, it is a vowel, and may have any one of the three values â or è, î, û. The details of the powers of l in Turkish words are given further on.

The ب is distinguished from the other letters of the same isolated form by being called *بَاءٌ مُوَحَّدَةٌ* (bā' l mawâhhâdê), *the single-dotted ب*; as the ت is named *تَاءٌ مُنْتَأَتٌ* (tā' l munsāt), *the double-dotted ت*, and the ث is designated *ثَاءٌ مُثَلَّثَةٌ* (sā' l muthallathê), *the triply-dotted ث*. The ت is further distinguished from the ط, also named *طَاءٌ*, by being called *تَاءٌ قَرَشَتْ* (tā' l qarashât), *the ت of (the word) قَرَشَتْ*; while ط is named *طَاءٌ حُطِّي* (tā' l huttî), *the ط of (the word) حُطِّي*. Again, the ت is distinguished, as a medial or initial, from the ي, then identical in form with it, by being called *مُنْتَأَتٌ فَوْقِيَّةٌ* (munsāt l fawqiyê), *superiorly double-dotted*; whereas the ي is then termed *مُنْتَأَتٌ تَحْتَانِيَّةٌ* (munsāt l tahtānīyê), *inferiorly double-dotted*. The ث is also called *ثَاءٌ نَحْذٌ* (sā' l saḥhâz), *the ث of نَحْذٌ*. The ب might be called *بَاءٌ اِبْجَدٌ* (bā' l ibjêd), *the ب of اِبْجَدٌ*; but I do not recollect the expression. It is, however, distinguished from the Persian پ by being designated *بَاءٌ عَرَبِيَّةٌ* (bā' l 'arābiyyê), *the Arabian ب*, the پ being called *بَاءٌ فَارِسِيَّةٌ* (bā' l fārisīyê), and *بَاءٌ عَجَمِيَّةٌ* (bā' l 'ajāmīyê), *the Persian ب*.

The simple name of the جيم جīm, sufficiently distinguishes the letter from all other Arabic characters. It has, therefore, no other designation in purely Arabic works. It is, however,

distinguished from the Persian چ by their being styled respectively جِمِ عَرَبِيَّه (jīmīl ʿarēblyyē), and جِمِ فَارَسِيَّه (jīmīl fārislyyē), or جِمِ عَجَمِيَّه (jīmīl ʿajāmlyyē).

The ح and خ are distinguished from one another by the terms حَاءٌ مُّهِمَلَةٌ (hāʾīl mūhmèlè) *neglected* (undotted) ح, and خَاءٌ مُّعْجَمَةٌ (khāʾīl mūʿjè mè) *distinguished* (dotted) خ, respectively. In Persian they are often called حَاءٌ بِيْنَقَطَةٌ (hāʾīl bī-nūqtā) *dotless* ح, and خَاءٌ نَقَطَةٌ دَارٌ (khāʾīl nūqtā-dār) *dot-possessing* (dotted) خ. These two pairs of Arabic and Persian adjectives go all through the alphabet, in the cases where a dot is the sole distinction between two letters of the same form; as, دَالِ مُّهِمَلَةٌ (dālīl mūhmèlè) د, and دَالِ مُّعْجَمَةٌ (zālīl mūʿjè mè) ذ. So also the distinctions by the words of the “numeral alphabet;” as, رَاءٌ قَرَشَتْ (rāʾīl qārāshāt) ر, and رَاءٌ قَرَشَتْ (zālīl sākhāz) ذ; دَالِ أَبْجَد (dālīl ʿabjed), د; زَاءٌ هَوَزٌ (zāʾīl hēvvéz) ز; &c.; سَيْنِ مُّهِمَلَةٌ (sīnīl mūhmèlè), س, and شَيْنِ مُّعْجَمَةٌ (shīnīl mūʿjè mè), ش; &c.

When we come to ف, the written names of the letters are so distinct of themselves, that no addition is necessary for فَاء (fā), ف; قَاف (qāf), ق; كَاف (kyāf, *vulgarly* kēf), ك; وَاو (vwāw), و; نُون (nūn), ن; مِيم (mīm), م; لَام (lām), ل. With ة a distinction again comes in, to differentiate the letter from ح. We, therefore, say هَاءٌ هَوَزٌ (hāʾīl hēvvéz), ه; as the ح is then termed حَاءٌ حُطِّي (hāʾīl hūtti); and ی is termed, as



mentioned above, يَاءٌ مُثَنَاتٍ مَعْتَانِيَّةٌ (yā'ī mūsnātl tāhtānlyyè); being also called يَاءٌ حُطِّيَّةٌ (yā'ī hūttl).

The Persian پ and چ are distinguished as is described above; and in like manner the ژ is called زَاءٌ فَارِسِيَّةٌ (zā'ī fārlslyyè), and زَاءٌ عَجَمِيَّةٌ (zā'ī 'ājamlyyè).

There remains now to distinguish, among consonants, the different sorts of ك used in Ottoman Turkish, and to point out their several names, as follows: The original Arabian ك is named كَافٌ عَرَبِيَّةٌ (kyāfl 'arèblyyè, *vulg.* kèfl 'arèbī), the *Arabian* ك; its value is that of our *k*. This letter was next used by the Persians for their *hard g*; it was then, and is still, distinguished by the name of كَافٌ فَارِسِيَّةٌ (kyāfl fārlslyyè, *vulg.* kyāfl fārlsī, kèfl fārlsī), and كَافٌ عَجَمِيَّةٌ (kyāfl 'ājamlyyè, *vulg.* kèfl 'ājamī). This variety is sometimes distinguished, in writing, in one or the other of two different methods. The Persians themselves mark the difference by doubling the upper dash of the letter in all its written variations—isolated, initial, medial, and final; thus: سَكَّ، مَكَّرَ، كَلَّ، كَكَّ; whereas the original Arabian ك, when isolated or final, has no dash at all; as: أَبُوكَ، ابْنُكَ; and a single dash, when initial or medial; thus: نَكْتَهُ، كَدَّرَ, also shaped نَكْتَهُ، كَدَّرَ.

When these two values of the one letter ك passed into use for the Ottoman language, a new mode of distinguishing the Persian from the Arabian variety was introduced. It con-

sisted of placing three dots over the Arabian form of the ك, together with a single dash in non-final positions; thus: كُكْ, كُكْ, مَكْ, سَكْ; thus marking the Persian *hard g* value of the letter.

But this letter, so differentiated in Persian writing, received in Ottoman Turkish a third value, that of our consonantal *y*, as a softened variety of its Persian value of *hard g*. This Ottoman value never occurs elsewhere than at the end, or in the middle of a word; as: بَكْ (bèy), يَكْمَكْ (bèyânmèk), يَكْرِي (ylyrml), اِكْرَمَكْ (lyrânmèk). In the middle of a word it may begin or end a syllable: bè-yân-mèk, ly-rân-mèk. When this letter follows a *u* vowel, and is itself followed by an *e* vowel, it glides into the value of our *w*; as سَوَكْ (sûwè), &c.

In Turkish, the ك, retaining the same form, received another value still, the fourth; being then for distinction's sake, called *surd* ن صَاغِرْ نُونْ (sâghîr nûn); as in أَلْ (èñ), أَكْمَقْ (âñmâq), سَنَكْ (sânñ), قَوَكُورْ (qôñûr). This value is never initial. When medial, it may begin, and may also end a syllable, as it ends many words. The three dots over the ك, mentioned in the preceding paragraph, are used by some to designate this Turkish value of *surd* ن; and at other times a single dot is used for that purpose, leaving the three dots to mark the Persian value of the letter. These varying

values of the ك constitute a serious difficulty in learning to read Ottoman Turkish. *Surd* ن is here transliterated ñ.

A similar variation in the phonetic value of the Arabic letter غ is to be observed in Ottoman Turkish words. Originally it is, in an Ottoman mouth, a simple hard *g*; as : غَالِبٌ (gālib), أَغْلَبُ (āglēb), مَغْلُوبٌ (māglüb). In Turkish words it has a softened value, very much like that of our *gh*, but still more softened, even to the point of practically disappearing from the pronunciation; as : طَاغٌ (dāgh, almost dāw), طَاغِيْنٌ (dāghīn, almost dā'īn), طَاغَدٌ (dāghā, dā'ā), طَاغِي (dāghī, dā'ī), طَاغْدُنْ (dā'dān), طَاغْدَه (dā'dā), &c. When preceded by an *o* or *u* vowel, the غ, in Turkish words, if followed by a vowel, glides into the value of our *w*, even as our own *gh* does in the word *throughout* (pronounced *thruwout*); as : طُوغَانٌ (dōwān), صُوغَانٌ (sōwān), قُوغُشٌ (qōwūsh); or it nearly disappears in pronunciation, as before; thus : اُولْدُيُغْمٌ (ōldūwūm, or oldu'um), اُولْدُيُغِي (ōldūwū, or ōldū'h).

SECTION II. *The Phonetic Values of the Letters and Vowel-Points, the Uses of the other Orthographic Signs, our System of Transliteration, and the Doctrine of Ottoman Euphony.*

We must divide the thirty-one Ottoman letters (omitting لا) into vowels and consonants. But it must first be premised that every letter is sometimes a consonant, while only four of

them are sometimes vowels. These are ا, و, ي, ة. All the others, twenty-seven in form, are always consonants. It will be more convenient to treat of the four vowel letters first, together with the vowel-points, which are not letters, but simply marks.

Usually, the vowel-points, three only in number, are not written; they are supposed to be known. But, in children's books, in Qur'ans, in books of devotion, &c., they are written; and sometimes in other books and papers also.

The vowel-points are named: 1, *âstûn*, اَوْتُونْ (*over*), the mark of which is a short diagonal from the right downwards towards the left, placed *over* any consonant; as: بَ, تَ, جَ, &c.; 2, *èsèrè*, اَسْرَه (no meaning), a similar diagonal, marked *under* any consonant; as: حِ, دِ, ذِ, &c.; 3, *ûtûrû*, اَوْتُرُو (no meaning), a small و-shaped mark, placed *over* any consonant; as: رُ, زُ, ثُ, سُ, &c.

These vowel-points mark, originally, the three Arabic short vowels, to which the additional Ottoman vowel-sounds, â, â, â have been added. The *âstûn* has the value of â or è, according to the consonant, &c., accompanying it; the *èsèrè* has the value of î or ï; and the *ûtûrû* that of ô, û, â, û, also according to its accompaniment.

The short vowel-sound indicated by each of these three marks always follows, in pronunciation, the sound of the consonant to which it is appended; so that we have the following

Ottoman syllabary, No. 1: **بَ** bā, bā, bā, bā, bē; **بِ** bī, bī; **بُ** bō, bō, bō, bō; and so on through the alphabet.

When it is required to make the vowel long, one of the three Arabic *letters of prolongation*, **حَرْفٌ مَدٍّ** (hārffī mēdd, *pl.* **حُرُوفٌ مَدٍّ** hūrūfī mēdd), has to be added to the consonant, still marked with its short vowel-point. The letters of prolongation, true *long vowels*, are **ا**, **و**, **ي**; of which **ا** always accompanies ūstūn, **ي** always accompanies èsèrè; and **و** always accompanies ūtūrd. We now have Ottoman syllabary No. 2, as follows: **بَا** bā, bā; **بِي** bī, bī; **بُو** bō, bō, bū, bū; &c.

We thus see that there are eleven Ottoman short vowels, and eight long. Our system of transliterating them is also made apparent. It is the simple method of using *a* or *e* to represent ūstūn, *i* to represent èsèrè, and *o* or *u* to represent ūtūrd. As these vowel-points shade off in phonetic value, we use **ā**, **ā**, **ā**, **ā**, or **ē** for ūstūn; **ī** or **ī** for èsèrè; and **ō**, or **ū**, **ū**, **ū**, for ūtūrd. After long consideration, we have for some years past adopted this system, as the simplest, and, on the whole, the most rational.

The values of these Ottoman vowels are those of the vowels in the following eleven words. They are all familiar English words, excepting the French *tu*, the vowel of which is unknown in ordinary English, though it exists in the dialects of some of our counties. These words are: *far*, *war*, *a*-(bove),

*pan, pen ; pin, girl ; so ; put, tu, cur.* We mark the vowels of these eleven guide-words to the Ottoman pronunciation, in the order in which they stand : fār, wār, ābove, pān, pēn, pīn, gīrl, sō, pūt, tū, cūr ; and for the eight Ottoman long vowels we use: fār, wār, pīn, gīrl, sō, pūt, tū, cūr. That is, nineteen Ottoman vowel-sounds in all, long and short. The student has but to remember the series of ten English words and one French, to become possessed of the key to the Ottoman vowel pronunciation. But he must learn never to swerve from the values of those guide-vowels. To an Englishman, with our slouchy method, this unswervingness is the most difficult point ; but, with a little patience at first, it is to be achieved. He must practice himself in pronouncing pāshā, پَاشَا (not pāshāw), bābā, بَابَا (not bāybā), dān, دَن (not dēn), sān, سَن (not sēn), bēn, بَن (which he will at once pronounce right), is-(tēmēk), اِسْتَمَكْ, fīr-(lāmāq), فِرْلَامَقْ, qōl, قَوْل (not qāl), qūl, قَوْل (not qūl), yūz, يُوْز (not yūz or yūz), and gyūz, كُوْز (not gyūz or gyūz, though these are also words or syllables).

The English student of Turkish has to exert his utmost care, in respect of the Ottoman vowels, to break himself of the home method of pronouncing a short vowel, and the same vowel when long, in two very different ways. The Ottoman vowels remain always pure ; they never change in phonetic *value* with a change in phonetic *quantity* ; thus, ā is always ā



made long ;  $\bar{i}$  is always  $\bar{i}$  long,  $\bar{o}$  is always  $\bar{o}$  long,  $\bar{u}$  is always  $\bar{u}$  long, &c., in the same word and its derivatives.

The student will have noticed above the Arabic *sign of quiescence* of a consonant. It is named *jèzm*, جَزْم and is never placed over a vowel, long or short.

The fourth Ottoman vowel letter,  $\mathfrak{h}$ , which, when a consonant, is the soft aspirate *h*, is also derived from the Arabic, but has a special history of its own. This letter is never used as a vowel in Arabic in any other position than that of a final to a noun, substantive or adjective, usually of the feminine gender, sometimes singular, and sometimes an irregular (*broken*, technically) plural. Such are the words—  
خَلِيفَة *khâlifè*, سُنَّة *sunnè*, حَسَنَة *hâsanâ*, طَيِّبَة *tâyylbè*, &c.

In Arabic, these pronunciations (as modified in Ottoman Turkish, as to the vowels, and as to the consonants) are those of the words when they close a sentence or clause in classical reading. They are also the pronunciations of the words in modern conversational Arabic.

But, originally, and to this day, in classical Arabic, those and all such words end not in a vowel at all. They all end in a consonant, in a letter *t* ; which, for certain grammatical reasons, is never figured ت, but always appears in the shape of a letter  $\mathfrak{t}$  surmounted by the two dots of the ت, thus  $\mathfrak{t}$ . Our specimen words are therefore, originally, خَلِيفَت *khâlifèt*, سُنَّت *sunnèt*, حَسَنَت *hâsanèt*, طَيِّبَت *tâyylbèt*. There are other

vowels and consonants to be added to the termination of these in classical Arabic, to mark the case-endings or declinations. Thus خَلِيفَةً, when definite, may be marked خَلِيفَةً khālīfètũ for the nominative, خَلِيفَةٍ khālīfètī for the genitive, خَلِيفَةً khālīfètā for the accusative. When indefinite, it becomes خَلِيفَةٌ khālīfètũn, خَلِيفَةٍ khālīfètĩn, خَلِيفَةٍ khālīfètān. In all these cases, when final in a sentence or clause, the case-endings are dropped from the pronunciation, though still written in vowel-pointed books, and the word becomes simply khālīfè throughout. These indefinite case-ending marks are called in Turkish اِيكِي اَوْتُوْرُو (ikl ūtũrũ), *double ūtũrũ*, اِيكِي اَسْرَه (ikl èsèrè), *double èsèrè*, and اِيكِي اُوْسْتُوْن (ikl ūstũn) *double ūstũn*.

A consideration now arose. In classical Arabic, final consonants may be either silent, or vocal with any one of the three short vowels. Thus : كَتَبْتُ kètèbèt, كَتَبْتُ kètèbètũ, كَتَبْتُ kètèbètā, كَتَبْتُ kètèbètī. When such words are final in a sentence or clause, the final consonant is made silent; so that we have kètèbèt, as before, for the first; but kètèbèt for all three of the remaining words. So نَصْرٌ, نَصْرٌ, نَصْرٌ, final, becomes nās̄r, as does نَصْرٌ and نَصْرٌ, though نَصْرٌ (always distinguished by a servile l being added—نَصْرًا nās̄rān) remains fully pronounced, or only loses the sound of the final n, and is read nās̄rā.

When the final ā of خَلِيفَةً khālīfèt, and similar words, was dropped from the pronunciation, the letter might have been



dropped in writing also; for خَلِيفَ would read khālifè just as well. It could, however, and would, be read خَلِيفَ khālīf, as Europe has done in making it into *Caliph*. It was necessary, then, to devise a method which should prevent the suppression of the vowel belonging to the last consonant of such words, and yet not be liable to be pronounced as a *t* with the case-endings. This convenient method was discovered by the arrangement adopted of suppressing the dots of the ة, and leaving the nude ا appended to the word, as خَلِيفَه khālīfè, &c. By this method final ا in such words became virtually a vowel in Arabic, though it is never mentioned as such in Arabic grammars or lexicons.

Persian has a very large number of nouns, substantive and adjective, that end in an ūstān vowel. When the Arabic alphabet became the sole mode of writing Persian, the Arab teachers would naturally use their quasi-vowel final ة to represent that final Persian sound. Thus, بَرَهَ bèrè, سَغَرَنَه sū-gurnè, آمَادَه āmādè, رَسِيدَه rèsidè, &c., were written. The ة was thus made a vowel in Persian also, when final. It was even made to follow one of the other two short vowels in very rare cases, when no other device was available. Thus we have the numeral سِه (sl), *three* (in Ottoman Turkish usually pronounced سَه sè), كِه (kl), *that*, چِه (chl), *what, that*.

When, by another historical step, Turkish began to be written in the Arabic characters modified by the special

Persian letters (Turkish scribes learning the method from Persian teachers in the land of Persia conquered by Turkish invaders, who there embraced Islam), the use of *ı* as a final vowel was found so convenient as to be naturally adopted. So *آبَ* èbè, *آطَ* áđá, &c., were written. Now, a whole class of Turkish gerunds, optatives, and imperatives of the third person, end with this vowel; we, therefore, have *اَيِدَ* idè, *گلدَ* gldè, *گُورَ* gyùrè, *قَالَ* qálá, *قِرَ* qırá, &c.

A further step was, therefore, possible to be taken in Ottoman Turkish, from which Persian writers had and have shrunk. The vowel *ı* was used as a medial also, whenever it was found that its introduction served to distinguish two words written alike, but pronounced differently. Thus *بِلْمَكْ* blmèk, could also be read *بِلْمَكْ* bllemèk. If the vowel-points were always marked, they would suffice for this case; but they are generally omitted. The gerund and optative *بِلَ* or *بِيلَ* was already in use. By writing *بِلْمَكْ* blmèk and *بِيلَمَكْ* bllemèk, the distinction was made clear. Hence, *ı* as a medial Ottoman vowel, always indicating a preceding *âstân* short vowel-point, became fully established. This medial or final Turkish vowel *ı* never joins on to the next letter in writing; as, *اَوْرَمَكْ* ùrèmèk, *اَوْطَدَيَ* ôđâyá.

From this sketch of the history of final and medial vowel *ı*, we see plainly how fundamentally erroneous is the common

European (or rather English) method of transliterating such words with a final or medial *h*. The nearest approach to correctness of which our orthography is capable, since we possess not the French *é* or German *e*, is to write all such words with a final *a*, as *khalifa*, *Fatima*, *Mekka*, *Medina*, *Brusa*, &c. These are usual; but جِدَّة *Jidda*, is usually spelt *Jeddah*; while قَاهِرَة *Qāhira* (usually *Cairo*), طَنْجَة *Tanja* (usually *Tangiers*), &c., have been made into monstrosities.

The phonetic value of an initial *l* is at first a difficulty to the European student, inasmuch as there appears to be nothing like it in Western languages. This, however, is more apparent than real, when fully explained.

We must remember that in Arabic the initial *l* or *ل* is a *consonant*, not a vowel. Like any other initial consonant, it takes the three short vowel-points, and is then pronounced: *l*, *la*, *li*. When it became a Persian letter, it was generally named *hémzè*, as it is usually called in Arabic when a consonant (but never when a vowel of prolongation, or final and short); although, in Persian words, it is always a vowel, whether initial, medial, or final. With the short vowel-points, this initial *l* is always a short vowel in Persian words, and the Arabian *hémzè* sign is never placed over it; thus: *أَر* *ér*, *أَز* *èz*, *أَسْب* *èsb*, *أَسْت* *èst*, &c.; *إِسْپَاهَ* *ispāh*, *إِسْفَاهَانَ* *Isfāhān*, &c.; *الْأَغ* *ulāg*, &c.

This initial short vowel Persian system was extended (in *practice*, not in *theory*) to all Arabic words used in Persian with ا for their initial letter. But the Arabic consonantal ا was then taken (in practice) to be a Persian vowel ا. Thus, أَبَوَاب was read èbvāb, اِبْتَدَا ibtildā, اُصُول usūl; &c.

When, in Arabic, the vowel of the initial consonantal ا became long, then, *as with any other initial consonant*, a vowel letter of prolongation,—a long vowel letter,—was appended to the ا; thus: اَاء, pronounced ā, اَو, pronounced ū, اِي, pronounced ī.

This system passed also into use in Persian words, the Arabic hémzè sign being omitted, even in Arabic words adopted into Persian; and thus the combinations اِي, اَو, اَاء, became the initial Persian long vowels; being pronounced respectively—ā, ū, ī. Thus: اَبَ āb, اُبَار ūbār, اِيَزِد īzèd; and with words originally Arabic: اَبَا ābā, اُولā ūlā, اِيْمَا īmā; &c.

The Arabians found the use of ا somewhat cumbersome. They therefore invented a sign, مَدَّة, called mèddā, and مَدَّ, mèdd, to be placed over an initial ا, with or without the hémzè sign, to designate the long vowel. Thus, instead of اَاء, they wrote اَبَا ābā, &c. The Persians adopted this system also, writing اَب āb instead of اَبَ āb. The double ا system, however, is still to be found in use in native Persian lexicons; where the first section of chapter 1 is generally figured with the two ا, not with آ.

It may be useful to mention here, that the Arabian writers employ this sign of mēdd to mark a medial or a quasi-final long vowel ِ, whenever this is followed in the word by a hēmmze, i. e., a consonantal ِ. Thus they write يَتَسَاءَلُونَ yētēsā-  
ʾālūnā, حَمْرَاءَ hāmṛāʾ, &c. These mēdd signs are omitted in Persian, as well as the final ِ; so that حَمْرًا hāmṛā is written, as well as pronounced, for حَمْرَاءَ; &c.

If a medial consonantal hēmmze in an Arabic word be followed by a long vowel ِ, the two are united, as in the initial ِ, into one ِ letter with the mēdd sign over it; as مَالٌ māʾāl (for مَائِلٌ). This also is adopted in Persian with such Arabic words as it occurs in; not being found in any original Persian words.

The mēdd sign is also used, in Arabic, sometimes taking another form, that of a small, perpendicular ', to mark the traditional omission, in writing (not in pronunciation), of a long vowel ِ in a few well-known words, such as اللَّهُ ʾllāh (for ʾllāh), الْإِلَهِي ʾllāhī (for ʾllāhī), رَحْمَنٌ or رَحْمَنٌ raḥmān (for رَحْمَانٌ), &c.

This perpendicular small ðlf-shaped mēdd is also placed, in Arabic, sometimes over a letter و, to mark that, though radically a و, it is a long vowel ِ in pronunciation, in the two words only, حَيَاتٌ ḥayāt (usually written حَيَاةٌ, in Persian and Turkish حَيَاتٌ) and صَلَاتٌ ṣalāt (usually written صَلَاةٌ, in Persian and Turkish صَلَاتٌ).

The mèdd sign is sometimes placed, in Arabic, over a long vowel و or ی, when they are followed by a hèmzè in the same word ; as in سُوِّ sūw, جِيَّ jīy. This peculiarity is not used in Persian or Turkish.

It is also sometimes placed over a long vowel medial ا, when this letter is followed by a reduplicated consonant in the same word ; as: مَادَّة mādde; it is not used in Persian or Turkish.

Such of the foregoing Arabic usages as have been adopted in Persian for words of Persian or of Arabic origin, are also employed in Ottoman Turkish for the same words ; though they are sometimes omitted in ordinary writing.

We now come to a purely Ottoman use of the mèdd sign, utterly unknown in Arabic and Persian. Thus : Whenever an initial vowel ا of an Ottoman word of Turkish or foreign (European or Indian) origin has the short sound of ä or â, the mèdd sign is placed over it, as a distinction from the initial sounds ä, â, è ; as : آمِيرَال amīrāl (French), آرِي ārī, آطه ādā (Turkish); but أَصَالَت āsālèt, أَوَّل āvvāl (Arabic), أر er (Turkish ; also Persian ; but two different words).

Another Ottoman peculiarity connected with the initial ا, when followed in writing by a vowel و or ی, is that these two vowels are not *necessarily* long vowels in words of Turkish or foreign origin. Thus اُوت üt, اُور ūr, اُوتو ütū, اُوتَمَك ütmeç, اُوفِچَال ūfichāl, اِيرَلَانْدَه irilāndā. They may then be called



*directing vowels.* In many old or provincial books and writings, these directing vowels are often or systematically omitted, the writers, from habit, or system, adhering to the original Arabic method of spelling by short vowel-points, for the most part omitted in current writing. This makes such books and papers immensely difficult to read and understand.

The three Arabic long vowels, ا, و, ی, having thus acquired a footing as Ottoman short directing-vowels, when following an initial letter ا, it was found convenient to extend the system, and to use them as short directing-vowels, following initial or medial consonants, thereby departing entirely from the Arabic and Persian systems. There is no method in use for distinguishing a long vowel letter from a short one in an Ottoman word of Turkish or foreign origin. We may almost venture to say that all such medial vowel-letters in Turkish and foreign Ottoman words are short vowels; whereas, in Arabic and Persian words they are always long. Thus: بَاشْ bâsh, قَیرْ qîr, قُوشْ qûsh, أَغْلَامَقْ âghlâmâq, صِزِلْدِ sîzîldî, بُزُلْمَاقْ bûzûlmâq, بُزُلْمَکْ bûzûlmék, گُیْدِرُلْدُ gyîdrûldû, کُورْنَمَکْ kûrñmék.

Hitherto we have considered only the *open* syllables, that is, those which end with a vowel. We have now to treat of the closed syllables,—those which end with a consonant.

In the original Arabic system, when a word or syllable ended with a *quiescent* consonant,—a consonant not followed



by a vowel sound or vowel letter in the same syllable,—such consonant was marked, in pointed writings, by the sign ° placed over it, which, as was before remarked, is called *jəzm*, جَزْم. Thus: بَبْ bēb, بَابْ bāb, بُوبْ būb, بيب bīb, &c.

It is a rule in classical Arabic, that two quiescent consonants cannot follow one another in the same syllable, whether as initials or as finals. Such a word or syllable as *crust*, *tart*, *blurt*, *flirt*, &c., is unknown. As far as two such initial consonants go, this rule prevails in the vernacular Arabic also, and has passed into the Persian and Turkish. Foreign words with such combinations of initial consonants to words or syllables are treated in one of two ways. When initial in a word, they may be separated into two syllables, either by a servile vowel *l*, generally with an *èsèrè* vowel, being prefixed; or by a vowel, generally *èsèrè*, being intercalated; and when the combination is initial to a non-initial syllable of a word, the latter method alone is used, or the syllables are so divided as to separate the two consonants. Thus: κλίμα has become اقليم *lqlīm*, *kral* has become قَرَال *qirāl*, *prince* has become پرنج *prlnj*, and *Svizzera* has become اِسْوِیْجَر *lsvichèr*.

In classical Arabic, a final word in a phrase or clause could terminate in two quiescent consonants; as: رَابْ rābt, عِلْم *ilm*, حَزْن *hūzn*, &c. This liberty is much used in Persian, Turkish,

and foreign, as well as in Arabic Ottoman words ; thus :  
 دُرُسْتُ dūrūst, آرد ārd, پرنس prīns, پرنج prīnj (*prince*) ; &c.

When a letter in an Arabic word ends one syllable, and begins the next in the same word, it is not written twice, but one sole letter is made to serve for the two, in pointed writings, by having a special mark, ّ, placed over it. This mark is an abbreviation of the Arabic word شَدَّ shēdd, which means a *strengthening, corroboration, reduplication*. Thus we have, شِدَّتْ shiddet, عَلَتْ ʿillet, بَقَالَ baqqāl, عَطَار ʿattār, مَدَّ mēdd, وَدَّ vidd, اُمَّ umm, &c. It is a *sine quā non* in Ottoman reading, and in correct speaking, to redouble such letters in the pronunciation. We can derive a correct idea of this reduplication by studying our expressions, *mid-day, ill-luck, run next*, &c. But, if such reduplicated Arabic word has passed into vernacular Ottoman use, then the redoubling is excused in ordinary conversation ; as in the words بَقَالَ baqqāl, عَطَار ʿattār ; &c.

This reduplication is really unknown in Persian ; consequently, reduplicated Arabic words are much used in Persian without reduplication ; thus خَطَّ is generally used in Persian as خَطَّ khāt, and has thence, as similar words, passed into Ottoman Turkish. On the other hand, pedantic imitation has commonly given to a few Persian words the Arabic peculiarity of reduplication, so passing into Ottoman also : thus,

پَر pèr (*a wing*), is sometimes pronounced پَرّ pèrr; and پَرَنَدَه pèrèndè, پَرَنَدَه pèrrèndè; &c.

This reduplicating system is not used in correctly writing Turkish Ottoman words, but it is sometimes met with in incorrect writings. The two letters should be written in full in such Turkish words; thus, چُولُوقُ chùllùq, بُولُوقُ bòllùq, اَمَمَكْ èmmèk, &c.

The Arabic word hémzè, هَمْزَة, besides being a name for the letter *h*, as before explained, is also the name of an orthographic sign, mark, or point, very variously used in Arabic and Persian. Most of the rules concerning it, which derive from the two languages, have passed into Ottoman Turkish, with an addition or two used in the Turkish transliteration of foreign words. Turkish words never require the sign.

The hémzè sign, هَمْزَة, would appear to be a diminutive head of the letter ع, thus indicating to the eye the guttural nature of the vocal enunciation it represents; which is, in fact, a softened choke, in an Arab mouth. But in Persian and Turkish pronunciation it is a slight *hiatus*, at the beginning of a non-initial syllable, or at the end of any syllable, initial, medial or final. It is placed *over* a letter when it bears the âstân or ûtûrû vowel, or is quiescent; *under* it, generally, with the èsèrè vowel.

The hémzè, in a word of Arabic origin, always represents a consonantal letter *h*, sometimes radical, sometimes servile.

In Persian words, the *theory* of the sign is the same as in Arabic, but the sign itself is always servile, and either final or nearly so.

When a hémzè, radical or servile, is initial in an Arabic word, it is never written or pronounced in Persian or Turkish. The *l* letter is then taken to be a vowel, and is treated accordingly. Thus, *أَمَل* *èmhèl*, becomes *آمل* *èmhèl*; *إِبِل* *èblil*, becomes *إيل* *èblil*; *أُم* *èmm*, becomes *أم* *èmm*. These are all radicals, and short. So again, *أَفْكَار* *èfkyār*, becomes *آفكار* *èfkyār*; *أَقْبَال* *èqbāl*, becomes *آقبال* *èqbāl*; *أُمُور* *èmūr*, becomes *أمور* *èmūr*; &c. These initials are all servile, and short. The modes and doctrine of making them into long vowels have already been described. In Persian, Turkish, and foreign words, an initial *l* is always a vowel, and is made long in the same way as if the word were of Arabic origin, as has been said before.

When a hémzè, radical or servile, in an Arabic word, is medial or final, a rather numerous body of rules come into play. Sometimes the letter *l*, then always called hémzè, is written, together with the hémzè sign over it, *أ* (as in *رأس* *rè's*), and sometimes the hémzè sign above is figured, as a letter now, without the *l*, in the body of the word; as in *يَتَسَاءَلُونَ* *yètèsā'èlūn*. In the former of these two cases, the hémzè is usually a final, quiescent consonant in its syllable; as, *رَأَتْ* *rè-fèt*, *مَأْمَن* *mè-mèn*, &c. In the latter case, the hémzè is the initial consonant of its medial or final syllable, movent with

ûstûn ; as in <sup>جَزَاءُ</sup> jûz-â'n, <sup>جَزَاءًا</sup> jêzâ-ân, &c. But it may also be both ; that is, a quiescent hêmzè may terminate one syllable, while another, a movent hêmzè, may begin the next syllable. In this case, as with any other consonant so occurring, one l alone is written, with a hêmzè sign over it ; and above this, the teshdîd sign is superadded, with an ûstûn sign over it again ; as in <sup>تَعَالَى</sup> tef-â-èl. This step never occurs in Turkish phrases ; but the explanation is needed, so as to make clear what follows.

This reduplicated medial hêmzè, movent with ûstûn, is sometimes followed by a long vowel l. In this case, instead of writing, for instance, <sup>رَأْسًا</sup> râ-âs, the two letters l are combined into one, with the signs mèdd and hêmzè, and without the ûstûn vowel ; thus, <sup>رَأْسًا</sup> râ-âs, as before. This combination is of very rare occurrence, happening only in derivative words, of which the root is trilateral, with hêmzè for second radical.

But a movent initial hêmzè of a syllable, medial in a word, may be followed by a long vowel l, without being reduplicated. It is then figured by a single written l with the hêmzè and mèdd signs ; as, <sup>مَالًا</sup> mâ-âl, &c.

These combinations, when used in Turkish, drop the hêmzè and teshdîd signs, but preserve the mèdd sign. The ûstûn vowel that precedes such mèdd sign is hardened from è into â,

on account of the following ā, even with a preceding soft consonant.

But, when such medial or final hémzè is itself movent with èsèrè, it is no longer written in the form of ا; it then takes the form of ي, without dots, and with a hémzè sign over it; as, رَئِيسَ rē'īs. If its vowel is ûtûrû, it is written as a و letter, with hémzè sign over it; as, رَؤُوسَ rā'ūs. In these two examples the vowels are long; but there are words in Arabic some perchance used in Turkish, in which they are short. Of course, the long vowel letters do not then follow the modified, disguised hémzè. Thus, رَائِسَ rā'īs, أَبُؤُسَ èb'ūs.

Moreover, when such medial or final hémzè, whether movent or quiescent, is preceded by a consonant movent with èsèrè, the hémzè is figured as a letter ي; and when movent with ûtûrû, the hémzè is written as a letter و; in either case surmounted by a hémzè sign; thus, بَئِيسَ bb'sà, بَؤُوسَ bb'ūs.

Such disguised medial hémzè may be followed by a long vowel letter; as, فُؤَادَ fū'ād, مَسْؤُولَ mēs'ul, رَئِيسَ rē'īs. If the hémzè be changed into a ي figure, and be followed by a long vowel ا, it becomes changed in Turkish, and sometimes in Arabic, into a consonant ي; as in رِياسَتَ rlyāsèt (for رَاسَتَ rāsèt).

There is a striking peculiarity in certain Turkish Ottoman derivatives, which causes great embarrassment to students, and has filled continental Turkish dictionaries and grammars



with totally misguiding examples and rules of pronunciation, with regard to the interchangeable vowel-letters و and ی. The peculiarity arose, I imagine, when all Ottoman Turkish was provincial, and was governed by the pronunciation of Asia Minor, variously modified in its various provinces. Thus the earliest writers made use, in all such derivative words, of the vowel-letter و (when they used any at all). They, therefore, wrote كَلُوبٌ gēlūb, كِيدُوبٌ gldūb, قَاجُوبٌ qāchūb, قِيرُوبٌ qīrūb, قُورُوبٌ qūrūb; and بَاشْلُو bāshlū, اَلْلُو elli; &c. These derivatives became, in course of time, in Europe, and in Constantinople, modified in pronunciation into gēllb, gldlb, qāchlb, qīrlb, qūrūb, bāshlī, elli, &c. The orthography, however, has remained sacred, excepting in the case of provincials, who sometimes write, as they pronounce, قَاجِيبٌ, كِيدِيبٌ, كَلِيبٌ, قِيرِيبٌ, قُورُوبٌ, بَاشْلِي, اَلْلِي, &c. This subject will be further developed in the paragraphs on Euphony.

Proceed we now to the phonetic values of the consonants.

The letter ب, equally used in Ottoman words of Arabic, Persian, Turkish, and foreign origin, has the value of our *b* generally, whether it be initial, medial, or final in a word. Thus: بَدٌ bēd, بِرٌ blr, بَارٌ bār, بِيْزٌ bīz, بُوزٌ būz, būz, būz, bōz; رِبَاطٌ ribāt, رَابْطٌ rābt, سُبُوتٌ sūbūt; كِتَابٌ kl̥tāb, جَنُوبٌ jēnūb, أَرِيبٌ ērīb, حَرْبٌ hārb, قَلْبٌ qālb; &c. But when medial or final, ending a syllable or word, it sometimes, anomalously, takes



the value of our *p*. Thus it is common to hear, كِتَابَ kltāp, طُوبَ tōp, ابتدا iptidā, كِتَابِجِي kltāpjī. Especially is this the case with the gerunds in وَبَ as, گِذُوبَ gldlp, گُلُوبَ gèllp, یَاذُوبَ yāzlp, اَوْقُوبَ oqūyūp, قِیْرُوبَ qīrlp.

The Persian letter پ is our *p* in all positions: پَدَر pèdèr, آپار āpār, اپَ lp. The Persian word اَسَپ èsp, and the Turkish word طوب tōp, are usually written with ب.

The Arabic ت is our *t* in all positions: تَاج tāj, تَاجَ tāj, أَتَل ètèl, قَتَرًا ètèrā, أَت èt, أَتْ èt, اِيت it, اُوت èt. In Turkish grammar it is sometimes changed into movent د in derivatives, when it is originally final and quiescent; as, دُرْت durt, دُرْدُنْجِي dūrdūnjī, دُرْدُنْ dūrdūñ, دُرْدَ dūrdè, دُرْدِي dūrdū, دُرْدُم dūrdūm, &c.; اِيت it, اِیدِر idèr, اِیدُوب idlp, اِیدِیجِي idljī; گِیت glt, گِیدِر gldèr, گِیدُوب gldlp, گِیدِیجِي gldljī; &c.

The Arabic ث is found in Arabic words only, and in a very few borrowed from the Greek. Its original value is that of our *th* in *think*; so that آيَاثُولُوحُ āyā-thūlūg, for ἅγιος θεολόγος, was not as bad as our *bishop* for ἐπίσκοπος. But in Turkish and Persian this value is unknown; the letter is pronounced as our *s* (sharp, never *z*); āyā-sūlūg is therefore the Turkish name of Ephesus, ثَابِت is pronounced sāblt, اَثَر èsèr, اِحْدَاث ihdās, &c. In some Arabic-speaking countries this letter has become a *t*; as, ثَلَاث tālātā, &c.

The Arabic ج in Turkish is our *soft g*, which we represent

by a *j* in all positions of all words, whatever their origin. Thus, جِنْسٌ jîns, أَجْنَاسٌ èjnās, آغَاجٌ āghāj. In some Arabic-speaking countries it is pronounced like our *hard g*; as, مَسْجِدٌ mèsjîd, سَجْدَةٌ sègdâ, &c. Sometimes it takes the sharp sound of ج, q.v.

The Persian چ has the value of our *ch* in *church*, of our *tch* in *crutch*. We never use the latter orthography in our transliterations,—always the former; as, أَچْمَقُ āchmāq, چَامُ chām, چُورُكُ chûrèk, چُورُوكُ chûrûk, چُورْبَا chòrbâ, اِیچَ ich, چَكُ chèk, چِلچِیكُ chlchèk. In Turkish derivation, this letter, in Turkish or foreign (not Persian, and there are no Arabic) words, sometimes becomes Arabic ج, but not as a rule.

The Arabic ح has the harshly aspirated sound of our *h* in *horse*, *hurl*, *her*; not its soft sound, as heard in *head*, *him*, *half*, &c. It is chiefly used in Arabic words; as, حَسَنٌ hāsān, حُسَيْنٌ hūsèyn, فَتَّاحٌ fèttāh, جُرْحٌ jûrh. We represent it by *h*; some adopt *ḥ*, to distinguish it from *ḣ*, q.v. Aspirate it always.

The Arabic خ has no equivalent in our language. It is the counterpart of the Scotch and German *ch* in *loch*, *ich*, &c. It is generally transliterated *kh*, as in the present treatise. Until the student has learnt its true pronunciation, he should consider it as a variety of *h*, and never pronounce it as a *k*, especially when it is initial. Thus, خِدِیوُ khîdîv (pronounce hîdîv, not kîdîv), خَدَاوَنْدِگَارُ kh.ûd.vèndghyār (pron. hûdā...),

سَاخ shākh, اِخْلَامُورُ lkhāmūr. In Turkish words, this letter is often used, provincially, for ق, and is itself sometimes pronounced ق. Thus, بَخَالِمُ bākhālīm (for بَقَالِمُ bāqālīm), أَخْشَامُ āqshām (for ākhshām).

The Arabic د is our *d* in all classes of Ottoman words, and requires no comment, unless it be to repeat that, in the derivation of *Turkish* words only, it sometimes takes the place of ت, and is used instead of ط in original words also; as, كَيْتَمَكَ gītmek, كَيْدَرُ gīdër; دَاغٌ dāgh.

The Arabic ذ, in an Ottoman mouth, is a *z*. It is found in Arabic words alone. Different Arab communities pronounce it as our soft *th* in *this*, as a *d*, or as a *z*. The Turk reads, أَكْهَزْ ākhz, ذِكْرٌ zīkr (*vulg.* zīklr), مَأْخُذٌ mèkhūz, بَذْرٌ bèzr.

The Arabic ر is our *r* in every position, in all classes of words: thus, رَأْفَتٌ rēfèt, بَارٌ bār, آرد ārd. There are two important remarks, however, which it is necessary for the English student to bear in mind with respect to this, *to him*, peculiar letter. Firstly, it *must* always be pronounced (never dropped or slurred over, as we pronounce *part*, pà't); and secondly, the value of the vowel before it in the same syllable must never be corrupted (as when we pronounce *pot*, pà't; *for*, fār; *cur*, cūr; &c.), but always kept pure, as with any other consonant; thus, قُورٌ qòr, قُورٌ qùr, سُورٌ sùr, كُورٌ gyùr, &c.; پِيرٌ pīr, قِيرٌ qīr, قِيرٌ qīr; &c.

The Arabic ز is our *z* in every word and every position ; زَادَ zād, زِيرَ zîr, زُورَ zûr, zûr, نَزَدَ nezd, أَزَ èz, أَزَ âz, âz, أَوْزَ ûz ; &c.

The Persian ژ is only found in Persian and French words ; it is of the value of our *s* in *treasure*, *pleasure*, and is transliterated *zh* ; as, ژَانِ zhāzh, پَژْمَرْدَ pèzhmârdè, اَتَاْمَژُورَ ètāmāzhôr, &c. It is of very rare occurrence.

The Arabic س is a soft *s*, always followed by a soft vowel in all words. It must never be pronounced as *z* ; thus, آسَا āsā, قَوْسَ qâvs, سَوْزَ sūz, sūz.

The Arabic ش is our *sh*, always ; as, شَادَ shād, اِشَ ish, نَشْرَ nèshr.

The Arabic ص, in Turkish, is a hard *s*, used in Turkish, and foreign words also, to designate a hard vowel ; thus, أَصَ ùss, أَصْمَقَ āsmâq, صُصْمَقَ sùsmâq, قِصْمَقَ qîsmâq. Never read it *z*.

The Arabic ض is very peculiar, being used in Arabic words only. It is generally pronounced as a hard *z* in Turkish, but sometimes as a hard *d* ; thus, رَاضِي rāzî, قَاضَا qāzā, اِنْقَاضَ ènqāz ; قَاضِي qādî, اَلْعَسْكَرُ qāzî-l-âskèr (vulg. قَاضِي عَسْكَرُ qāzî-l-âskèr), &c. Its Arabic sound is inimitable to a European without long practice.

The Arabic ط, besides being an element of Arabic words, always as a hard *t*, is used in Turkish and foreign words, sometimes with that value, sometimes as a very hard *d*, when

initial. Thus, طُلُوعٌ tülû', قُطْرٌ qûtr, خَطٌّ khâtt; طَاتِلٌ tâtlî, طَاغٌ dāgh, تُوْزٌ tūz, طِيقَامٌ tiqāmāq, طَاوْرَانِمٌ dāvranmāq.

The Arabic ط is used in Arabic words only, as a very hard *z*. Thus, ظَالِمٌ zālim, ظُلْمٌ zûlm, ظِفْرٌ zîfr, ظَفَرٌ zâfer, حَظٌّ hāzz, مَحْظُوزٌ mahzûz.

The Arabic ع is, as a general rule, used in Arabic words only. It is a strong guttural convulsion in an Arab throat, softened in Turkish to a *hiatus*, and often disappearing entirely. We represent it by a Greek *spiritus asper*. Thus, عَصْرٌ 'âsr, طَاعِنٌ tâ'n, مَلْعُونٌ mël'un, قَطَعَ qât', مَقْطُوعٌ mâqtû'. The Turkish word عَرَبٌ 'arâbâ (for أَرَابَة) is, however, with its derivatives, always written with this letter, of course corruptly.

The Arabic غ is, originally, a peculiar Arabian kind of *hard g*, with a sound vergeing on that of the French *r grasséyé*, which English dandies sometimes imitate. But in Turkish pronunciation it is either a simple *hard g*, when initial; as, غَالِبٌ gālib, غَفَلَتْ gāflèt, غَايِدَةٌ gāydâ, &c.; and either that when medial or final in Arabic words only, or like our softened *gh* in Turkish words; often disappearing, or nearly so, and changing, like it, into a *w* sound after or before an *û* hard vowel. Thus, اِغْفَالٌ igfāl, صَدَغٌ sâdg, مَغْفُورٌ mâgfûr; اَغْلَامٌ āghlāmāq, طَاغٌ dāgh, اُولْدِيغِي ōldûwî, صُوعَانٌ sôwân, طُوعَانٌ dôwân, صُوعُوقٌ sôwûq; طَاغُوقٌ tâwûq, لَاغُوطَةٌ lāwûtâ; &c.

The Arabic ف is our *f* in all words and all positions.

There is no reason whatever to write the senseless, false Latin-French *ph* instead of *f*, as in *caliph*, a corruption of *khâlifé*, خَلِيفَه. Thus, فَرَضَ fârz, لَفَظَ lâfz, صَوَّفَ sôf.

The Arabic ق *q* is our *q* in all words and all positions. It is erroneous and regrettable to represent it by *k*, as is generally done. The words قُرْآنَ qurân, أَقَى âq, وَقْتُ wâqt, are thus correctly rendered, leaving the *k* to represent its legitimate ancestor, ك.

The Arabic ك, in all words and all positions, is our *k*. When initial in a word or syllable before a long ا or و vowel, and also before a short ا vowel, it borrows, in an Ottoman mouth, the sound of a *y* after itself before the vowel; but not so before the short ا vowel, the short ا vowel, or the long ا vowel. Thus, كَازِبٌ kyâzib, أَكُولُ êkyûl, كُورُكُ kyûpek; كَدِي kedi, كِرَامٌ kîrâm, وَكِيلٌ vekiîl. Its name, in Arabic, requires no addition; but in Persian and Turkish it has to be distinguished from the Persian letter of the same form, but widely different phonetic value. It is then termed كَافِ عَرَبِيَّة kyâfi 'âreblyyè. In Arabic and Persian Ottoman words it remains unchangeable by grammatical inflexion; but in Turkish words, when final, it undergoes phonetic degradation on becoming movent, and is pronounced as a Persian ك, and even as a *y*; or sometimes as a *w* after an ا vowel. Thus, اِيْپَكъ ipêk, اِيْپَكِ ipêyî, اِيْپَكِه ipêyè, اِيْپَكِي ipêyi; سُولُكъ sôlukъ.



sûldk, سُولُوكْ sûlûyûñ, سُولُوكْ sûlûyê, سُولُوكْ sûlûyû; اَيْتَمَكْ itmek, اَيْتَمَكَيْنْ itmeyln.

The Persian ك, called كَافِ فَارِسِيَّه kyāfl fārlslyyê, and عَجَمِ كَافِ kyāfl fārlsī, or كَافِ عَجَمِي kyāfl 'ājāmī (vulg. كَفِي 'ājām kâfl), is the Persian *hard g*. It is unknown in Arabic, is unchangeable in Persian words, and is never final in Turkish words or syllables. Thus, سَكْ sêg, سَكْ sêglñ, سَكْ sêgê, سَكِي sêgl; كَلْ gâl. In ordinary writing and print it is undistinguished from its Arabic original; but the Persians mark it with a double dash: كُلْ gyâl, سَكْ sêg. In some Turkish books it is marked with three dots: كُكْ, سَكْ.

The Ottoman ك, ignored by all previous writers, eastern and western, consequently nameless, but which we venture to term كَافِ عُثْمَانِيَّه kyāfl 'ösmānlyyê, the Ottoman ك, is found in Turkish words only, as a medial or a final, never as an initial to a word, though it is used as an initial letter in a non-initial syllable. Its phonetic value is that of our *y* in all cases, though it has no mark to distinguish it. It is both radical, as in بَكْ bêy, دِكْ dlyl, يَكْرِمِي ylylrmī; or it is grammatical, declensional, servile, representing a softened Arabic radical or servile ك, become movent, as in كُوكْ kyûpêk, كُوكْ kyûpêylñ, كُوكْ kyûpêyê, كُوكْ kyûpêyl; سُورْمَكْ sûrmek, سُورْمَكَيْنْ sûrmeyln; سُودْ sâvdlk, سُودْ sâvdllyl, سُودْ sâvdllylñ, سُودْ sâvdllyl. Most European writers



represent this value by *gh*; but the practice is insufficiently considered, and altogether misleading.

The Ottoman *nasal* ن, distinguished by the name of *surd n*, نُونُ صَاحِرٌ *sāghîr nûn*, is a second special Turkish phonetic value of the letter ن, or nasal letter, which we transliterate with the Spanish nasal ñ. It has the phonetic value of our English *ng* nasal, as in *sing, thing, &c.* In ordinary writing and print, it has no mark by which a student may recognize it; but sometimes three dots distinguish it, and one recent writer has marked it with one dot, نْ (as with him the three dots, نَ, serve to point out the Persian letter or sound). This value is never initial to a word. As a medial, it sometimes ends, sometimes begins a syllable; as, أَكَلَامَقْ *âñlâmâq* (*vulg.* *ânnâ-mâq*), تَكْرِى *tâñrî* (*vulg.* *târî*); گُيْدُنْل *gyûñdl*, دَنْز *dêñlz*, آيْز *âñiz*, صُورْ *sôñrâ* (*vulg.* *sôrâ*). When final to a word, it is usually sounded as a simple *n*; as, بَنْ *bêñ* (*bên*), سَنْ *sânñ* (*sânln*), كَلْ *gâññ* (*gâlln*), طَنْ *dâñ* (*dân*), صُونْ *sôñ* (*sôn*). When medially final it is usually softened in like manner, or is elided in pronunciation. In أَكَلَامَقْ and its derivatives (itself derived from أَكْ *âñ*), the following ل is exceptionally incorporated with it in pronunciation, as though by a kind of inversion of the Arabic rule of conversion for the ل of the definite article ال before certain letters called *solar* (for which see next paragraph on letter ل).

The Arabic ل is our letter *l* in all words and all positions;

as, أَكْلَامٌ lāzūm, أَيْنَ āin, دَالٌ dāl. The Turkish word أَكْلَامٌ, mentioned above, is, with its derivatives, a modern Ottoman exception of the capital; and the Arabic rule for the conversion of the *ل* of the definite article ال, in pronunciation, when followed by a noun or pronoun beginning with a *solar* letter, حَرْفِ شَمْسِيّ hārflī shēmsī, into that solar letter reduplicated by a *tēshdīd*, is a classical exception, peculiar to Arabic compounds. The *solar* letters are fourteen in number (exactly the half of the alphabet); viz., ص, ش, س, ز, ر, ذ, د, ث, ت, ن, ل, ط, ظ, ض. Thus we have أَتَيْنَ èt-tīn, أَشْمَنُ ès-sēmèn, أَشْمَنُ ès-sūmn, أَذْعَا èd-dūā, أَذْكُرُ èz-zīkr, أَشْمَكُ ès-sēmèk, أَشْمُ èsh-shēms (whence the name of شَمْسِيّ), أَصْفَا ès-sāfā, أَضْحَا èd-duhā, أَزْهَا èz-zuhā, أَطَالِعُ èt-tālī, أَظْلَمُ èz-zūlm, أَلْزَمُ èl-lāzlm, أَلْنُورُ èn-nūr. In the pronoun الَّذِي, and its derivatives, the written *ل* of the article disappears also. The sign ۞ placed over the *ل*, so omitted in pronunciation, is named وَصْلٌ junction; and is the letter ص of that word, specially modified.

The Arabic letters م and ن are our *m* and *n* respectively, in all words and positions: مَالٌ māl, أَمَلٌ èmèl, بَيْنٌ bènlm, نَازِلٌ nāzlr, حُزْنٌ hūzn.

The Arabic letter و is sometimes a consonant, sometimes a vowel. When a consonant, it has the phonetic value of our *v*, of our *w*, or of these two combined, the *v* beginning, and the *w* ending the sound of the letter. Thus, وَارٍ vār, جَوَابٌ jèwāb,

وَصَفَّ vwâsf, وَاقِعَ vwâqî'. The ear alone can decide these differences. But when the consonant و is reduplicated in an Arabic word, it has always the *v* value; as, قَوَّالٌ ávvâl, قَوَّالٌ qâvvâl. Ottoman corruption even then may sound it, in hard lettered words, as a reduplicated *w*—qâwwâl. The word قَوَّافٌ qâwwáf (or قَوَّافٌ qâwáf) is an Ottoman corruption of Arabic خَفَّافٌ khâffáf.

When the letter و is a vowel in an Arabic or Persian word, it always has the value of *û*; excepting a few Persian words, become Ottoman vernaculars, in which it takes the sound of *ò*. Thus, لَزُومٌ lûzûm, مَمْنُونٌ mêmnnûn; شُورٌ shûr; دُوسْتٌ dôst (dûst), خُوشٌ khòsh (khûsh). In Turkish and foreign words it is generally, if not always, short, and may have either the value of *ò*, or of *ù*, *û*, *ü*, which there is no means of distinguishing, save that of accompanying *hard* or *soft* consonants. With a hard consonant, in a Turkish or foreign word, the vowel-letter و (often omitted) must have the sound of either *ò* or *ù*, unless it be considered long, when it becomes *ô* or *û*; thus, قَوْمٌ qòmâq, قُورْمَقٌ qûrmâq. With a soft consonant, it must be read either *ù* or *ü*, *û* or *ü*; as, يَوْمٌ yûzmék, سَوْمٌ sûzlâ. If the accompanying consonant or consonants be neutral, all guidance is lost; as, بَوْمٌ bôz, bûz, bûz, سَوْمٌ sûz, sûz. In derivatives there is, however, frequently a servile vowel or consonant, hard or soft, that helps. Thus, بُوْزَانٌ bôzân, بُوزْلُوقٌ bûzlûlûq, بُوزْمَكٌ bûzmék, سُوزْمَكٌ sûzmék; but سُوزٌ sûz has no

such helping derivative. As to the long and short value, each individual ear must decide for itself in words of these two classes—Turkish and foreign. Vowel *و* is never initial; it must be preceded by *ل* to represent an initial *lâ* sound; as, *أَوَّلَمَقْ* *ôlmâq*, *أَوَّلَمَكْ* *ôlmék*, &c.

The Arabic letter *س* has already been fully discussed.

The Arabic letter *ي*, like the *و*, is either a consonant or a vowel.

When a consonant, it has the value of our consonant *y*, whether it be initial, medial, or final, simple or reduplicated. Especially must this be understood when the letter is consonantly final in an Arabic word. As a consonant, and only as a consonant, we transliterate it by a *y*. Therefore, when we use a *y* as the final of a transliterated Arabic word, it must be read and sounded as such, never as an *i* vowel; an observation that continental scholars do not generally understand, unless they may be Germans. Thus we have: *يَدَكْ* *yêr*, *يَدَكْ* *yêdek*, *يَازْ* *yâz*, *يُوزْ* *yûz*, *بَيْنَ* *bèyn*, *بُيُوتْ* *bôydun*; *بَيَ* *pèy*, *شَيَ* *shèy*, *رَأَى* *rèy*, *مَيَ* *mèy*, *حَيَ* *hây*, *قَيُّومَ* *qâyyûm*, *وَلَى* *vèly*, *رَمَى* *rèmy*, *وَشَى* *vèshy*, *مَشَى* *mèshy*. This is a difficulty to a student at first, as we have nothing like it in English.

When the *ي* is a vowel, it is never initial. If a vowel *i* or *î* sound be initial in any Ottoman word (Arabic, Persian, Turkish, or foreign), the *ي*, if written, is always preceded by

an *l* ; as, ایدی *ldi*, اِیْلَاق *ırlâmaq*. When medial, it is always long in Arabic and Persian words ; as, اَمِیر *emîr*, بِن *bîn*. In Turkish and foreign words, medial vowel *ی* is generally, if not always short ; as, وِیْرْمَک *vîrmek*, قِیْرْمَاق *qîrmâq*. When final in an Arabic word, it is also always short ; as, رَاضِی *râzî*, قَاضِی *qâzî*, رَاضِی *râzî*, دَاعِی *dâ'î*, جَارِی *jârî*, سَارِی *sârî*, &c. But there are hosts of Arabic words ending in reduplicated consonantal *ی*, which, in Persian and Turkish, are used as Arabic words, generally adjectives, terminating in a long vowel *î* or *î* ; as, یَوْمِی *yèvmî*, سَنَوِی *sènevî*, شَهْرِی *shèhrî*, عَرَبِی *‘ârèbî*, فَارِسِی *fârlsî*, قَاطِی *qâtî*, اُفْقِی *ûfûqî*, حِفْظِی *hîfzî*, &c. When these become feminine, the reduplicated nature of their final consonantal *ی* becomes apparent ; as, یَوْمِیَّه *yèvmlyè*, قَاطِیَّه *qâtîyyè*, &c.

There are many Persian derivative words, adjectives or substantives (besides others not used in Turkish), which really end in long vowel *ی*. The adjectives are precisely similar to the Arabic adjectives just described, as modified in Persian and Turkish ; but they have no feminine. Thus, شَاهِی *shāhî*, ‘royal ;’ خُسْرَوِی *khûsrèvî*, ‘imperial ;’ شِیرَازِی *shîrâzî*, ‘of Shiraz ;’ &c. The substantives indicate abstract qualities ; as, شَاهِی *shāhî*, ‘royalty ;’ وَزِیرِی *vèzîrî*, ‘vezirial office or functions ;’ &c.

Turkish and foreign final *ی*, radical or servile, is always a short vowel ; as, کَدِی *kèdî*, آری *‘ârî*, &c. ; اَوِی *èvî*, بَابَاسِی *bâbâsî*, اَوَطَهِی *ôdâyî*, تَرَهِی *tèrèî*, &c.

The vowels *ı* and *e* are sometimes interchangeable in Turkish words and derivations, and are sometimes omitted, without any inflexible rule being assignable. Thus, اَيْتَمَامَكْ, اَيْتَمَمَكْ, اَيْتَمَدَمَكْ, İtmémék, are all admissible. The true rule is: "Never introduce a vowel letter into a Turkish or foreign word without removing a possible doubt as to pronunciation; never leave out a vowel in such word, if by the omission a doubt is created as to pronunciation." The orthography of Arabic and Persian words is fixed, and admits of no such variation. Persian words admit, however, of abbreviation by the omission of a vowel; as, شَاهْ shāh, شَهْ shéh; پَادشَاهْ pādshāh (*vulg.* pādīshāh), پَادشَهْ pādshéh; شَاهِنشَاهْ shāhīnshāh, شاهنشَهْ shāhīnshéh, شَهِنشَاهْ shéhīnshāh, شَهِنشَهْ shéhīnshéh; &c.

In many Turkish words the vowels *و* and *ی* are used for one another by different writers, at different times, in different places; even at one place and time; even by one writer at different times, or in the selfsame document; but this last as a license or an inadvertency. Consistency in this matter is advisable. Thus we have: بَاشْلُوْ bāshlū, بَاشْلِيْ bāshlī, كُورُ gèlür, گِیْرُ gèllr; آروْ ārū, آری ārī; &c.; words differently written, but the selfsame in reality.

The Ottoman alphabet is divided into three classes of consonants, hard, soft, and neutral. The hard letters are nine in number: ق, غ, ع, ط, ظ, ض, ص, خ, ح. The soft letters are only six: ا, ة, ک, م, ز, ت. The remaining letters,



sixteen in the whole, are neutral : ر, ز, د, چ, ج, ث, پ, ب, ی, و, ن, م, ل, ف, ش, ژ.

As the orthography of every Arabic and Persian Ottoman word is fixed and unchangeable, it is only in Turkish and foreign Ottoman words, and in the declensions and conjugations of all Ottoman words, that the rules relating to hard and soft letters are carried out. This is the first and chief part of the beautiful system of Ottoman euphony.

If any one of the hard or soft consonants is used in a Turkish Ottoman word, all the other radical and servile letters of the word, of its derivations, and of its declension or conjugation, must be of the same class, or of the neutrals. Thus we have: قَازَمَقْ qāzmāq, كَزَمَكْ gēzmek ; قَازِدِیْ qāzdīghī, كَزِدِیْ gēzdīlī ; قَازِلِقْ qārlīq, كُوزُلُكْ gyūzlūk ; &c.

The Ottoman vowels are also of these three classes. The hard vowels are : á, ā, î, ī, ó, ō, ù, ū ; eight in all. The soft vowels also eight : â, ê, í, î, û, ü, ñ, ñ. The neutral vowels are á, ā, â. These vowels always accompany their own class of consonants, or the neutrals. The neutral vowels can accompany any class of consonant. Thus we have : بَابَا bābā, أَنَا ānā, پَاشَا pāshā, سَن sán, بَن bèn, قِرمَقْ qīrmāq, كِرمَكْ glīrmek, قَوْمَقْ qómāq, قُرمَقْ qūrmāq, كُوزَمَكْ gyūzētmek, كُورَمَكْ gyūrmek.

When in a Turkish Ottoman word a vowel is the dominant letter, its consonant or consonants being neutrals, the declen-



sion, conjugation, and derivation from that word follow the class to which the dominant vowel belongs ; thus, <sup>آتَمَّقْ</sup> *âtmâq*, <sup>اَغْرِلَّقْ</sup> *âghîrlîq*, <sup>اِیْرَلَمَّقْ</sup> *îrlâmâq*, <sup>اُومَمَّقْ</sup> *ûmmâq*, <sup>اُوغَرَمَّقْ</sup> *ûghrâmâq* ; <sup>اَلَمَمَّكْ</sup> *êlêmek*, <sup>اِیْنَمَكْ</sup> *înmek*, <sup>اُیُوزَمَكْ</sup> *yûzmek*, <sup>اُورَمَكْ</sup> *ûrmek*.

When an Arabic or Persian word is declined or derived from, in Ottoman Turkish, its last dominant letter or vowel decides whether the declension or derivation shall be made with hard or soft letters and vowels ; thus, <sup>مَرْبُوتْ</sup> *mêrbût*, <sup>مَرْبُوتِلْدُقْ</sup> *mêrbûtldq* ; <sup>اَمِیْرْ</sup> *êmîr*, <sup>اَمِیْرِلِکْ</sup> *êmîrlik* ; <sup>اَسَانْ</sup> *āsān*, <sup>اَسَانِلِیْقْ</sup> *āsānlîq* ; &c.

When the sole dominant vowel of a Turkish Ottoman word, or the last dominant letter or vowel of a Turkish, Arabic, Persian, or foreign Ottoman word, is of the *o* or *u* class, hard or soft, all possible consonants, and all vowels in the declension, conjugation, or derivation therefrom, not only conform to the class of such dominant, but furthermore, all consecutive servile vowels in the derivatives that would otherwise be *êserê*, become <sup>اُتُرُؤْ</sup> *ûtûrû*, of the class of the dominant ; that is, become *û* when the dominant is *ò* or *û*, and become *ü* when the dominant is *ü* or *ü* ; thus, <sup>اُولْغُنْ</sup> *òlgûn*, <sup>اُولْغُنِلْدُقْ</sup> *òlgûnldq*, <sup>اُولْدُیْ</sup> *òldû* ; <sup>اُولْغُنْ</sup> *tùtgûn*, <sup>اُولْغُنِلْدُقْ</sup> *tùtgûnldq*, <sup>اُولْدُیْ</sup> *tùtdû* ; <sup>سُورُكُدْرَمَكْ</sup> *sûrûkdûrmek*, <sup>سُورُكُدْرُلْمَكْ</sup> *sûrûkdûrûlmek* ; <sup>سُورُشْمَكْ</sup> *sûrûshmek*, <sup>سُورُشْدُرْمَكْ</sup> *sûrûshdûrmek*, <sup>سُورُشْدُرْلْمَكْ</sup> *sûrûshdûrûlmek* ; <sup>كُورُشْمَكْ</sup> *gyûrûshmek*, <sup>كُورُشْدُرْمَكْ</sup> *gyûrûshdûrmek*, <sup>كُورُشْدُرْلْمَكْ</sup> *gyûrûshdûrûlmek* ;

gyûrûshdûrûlmék. But if, in such words, an ûstûn vowel come in by the ordinary course of derivation or conjugation, and be followed by a syllable or syllables with an èsèrè vowel, the influence of the radical dominant ûtûrû is destroyed by such intervention ; as, بُوْزُشْمَقْ bôzûshmâq, بُوْزُشْمَقْلِقْ bôzûshmâqlîq, بُوْزُشْمَغِيْنْ bôzûshmâghîn ; كُوْرُشْمَكْ gyûrûshmék, كُوْرُشْمَكْلِكْ gyûrûshméklik, كُوْرُشْمَكِيْنْ gyûrûshmèyîn.

## CHAPTER II.

## THE OTTOMAN ACCIDENCE OR ETYMOLOGY.

SECTION I. *The Noun Substantive.*

THERE is no gender. If the female of an animal has not a special name, as, طَاوُق (tāwûq), a hen, قِسْرَاق (qîsrâq), a mare, اِيْنَك (inêk), a cow, قَانَجِيْق (qânjîq), a bitch, the female is named, as with us, a she..., دِيْشِي (dlshî); as, دِيْشِي اَرْسَلَان (dlshî ārslân), a lioness; &c. If the female be a girl or woman, she is never named dlshî, but is mentioned as قِيْز (qîz), maiden, or قَارِي (qârî), matron, accordingly; as, قِيْز خِدْمَتَجِي (qîz khîzmètjî), or خِدْمَتَجِي قِيْز (khîzmètjî qîz), a servant maid, a maidservant; قَارِي اَشْجِي (qârî âshjî), or اَشْجِي قَارِي (âshjî qârî), a woman cook, a cook woman.

There is, really, no declension of nouns in Turkish; but the prepositions, perhaps eight in number, by some termed *postpositions*, are subjoined to the noun, singular or plural, the plural being always formed by adding the syllable لَر (lâr, lèr) to the singular; thus:

Nom.	اَوْقُ òq	(arrow),	اَوْقُلَرُ òqlâr	(arrows).
Gen.	اَوْقُكُ òquñ	(of —),	اَوْقُلَرُكُ òqlârîn.	

Dat.	أَوْقَ	òqâ	(to —),	أَوْقَلَرَا	òqlârâ.
Loc.	أَوْقَدَ	òqdâ	(in —),	أَوْقَلَرَدَ	òqlârdâ.
Acc.	أَوْقَى	òqû	(the —),	أَوْقَلَرَى	òqlârî.
Abl.	أَوْقَدَنْ	òqdân	(from —),	أَوْقَلَرَدَنْ	òqlârdân.
Inst.	أَوْقَلَهْ	òqlâ	(with —),	أَوْقَلَرَلَهْ	òqlârlâ.
Caus.	أَوْقِ إِيحُونْ	òq ichùn	(for —),	أَوْقَلَرِ إِيحُونْ	òqlâr ichùn.

Nom.	أَوْ	év (house),	أَوَلَرْ	èvlér (houses).
Gen.	أَوِكْ	èvlî,	أَوَلَرِكْ	èvlèrlî.
Dat.	أَوْهْ	èvé,	أَوَلَرَهْ	èvlèrè.
Loc.	أَوَدَ	èvdé,	أَوَلَرَدَ	èvlèrdé.
Acc.	أَوَى	èvî,	أَوَلَرَى	èvlèrî.
Abl.	أَوَدَنْ	èvdèn,	أَوَلَرَدَنْ	èvlèrdèn.
Inst.	أَوَلَهْ	èvlè,	أَوَلَرَلَهْ	èvlèrlè.
Caus.	أَوِ إِيحُونْ	év ichùn,	أَوَلَرِ إِيحُونْ	èvlér ichùn.

Most Turkish singulars (not all) ending in ت soften this letter into د before a junctional vowel preposition ; thus, قُورَتْ (qurt), *wolf*, قُورْدُكْ qurduñ, قُورْدَ qurda, قُورْدَى qurdu ; not so before a consonant or separate word ; as, قُورْتَدَ, قُورْتَدَنْ, قُورْتَلَهْ, قُورْتَلَهْ إِيحُونْ ; but قُورْتِ أَتِكْ atîñ, أَوْتَى òtû, &c.

Most, if not all, Turkish singulars, of more than one syllable, ending in ق, soften it into غ before junctional vowels ; as, چَارْدَاقْ (chârdâq), *trellis*, چَارْدَاغِئْ chârdağhîñ,

چَارْدَاغِه chardāghā, چَارْدَاغِی chardāghī. Those in Arabic ك soften it into Turkish ك (y value); اِیْپَکْ (ipék), *silk*, اِیْپَکْ (ipèyñ), اِیْپَکْ (ipèyè), اِیْپَکِی (ipèyî). Those in Persian ك (g value), do not change it; as, سَنَکْ sèng, *stone*, سَنَکْ (sèngñ), سَنَکْ (sèngè), سَنَکِی (sèngî).

These rules do not apply to Arabic and Persian substantives; these retain their final ق or ك unchanged; unless the borrowed word has passed into the mouth of the vulgar as an everyday expression; as, فِستِقى fístiq, فِستِغِی fístighî, &c.

Singulars ending in a vowel, take ن in the genitive, and consonant ی in the dative and accusative, to support the vowel taken by a final consonant; as, أَبَا (bābā), *father*, أَبَا نَکْ (bābānñ), أَبَا یَکْ (bābāyā), أَبَا یِی (bābāyî); قُود (qāpū), *door, gate*, قُود نَکْ (qāpūnñ), قُود یَکْ (qāpūyā), قُود یِی (qāpūyî, where ūtūrā dominates); آری (ārî), *bee*, آری نَکْ (ārîññ), آری یَکْ (ārîyā, written separately on account of two letters ی), آری یِی (ārîyî); کَدِی (kēdî), *cat*, کَدِی نَکْ (kēdîññ), کَدِی یَکْ (kēdîyā), کَدِی یِی (kēdîyî), &c.

Singulars ending in vowel ı do not join this letter to the sign of the plural, in writing; as, پِیدَہ (pîdè), پِیدَہ لَر (pîdèlèr).

The word صو (sū), *water*, irregularly forms its genitive as صُودْ (suyūñ, almost the only exception or irregularity in the language). صُوی (sōy), *sort*, ends in a consonant, and is regular; صُودْ (sōyūñ), صُوی (sōyā), صُوی (sōyî).

Arabic and Persian substantives never change their final consonants for declension; طَبَقْ (tābāq), *plate*, طَبَقَاتْ tābāqāt; اِمْسَاكْ (ımsāk), *refraining*, اِمْسَاكَه (ımsākè); صَلَاتْ (sālāt), *worship*, صَلَاتِي (sālātī). Their final vowels follow the same rules with those in Turkish words; دُعَا (dū‘ā), *prayer*, دُعَائِكَ dū‘ānık; پِيَادَه (piyādè), *foot-man*, پِيَادَهِي (piyādèyè); چَارْسُو (chārsū), *market*, چَارْسُونِي (chārsūyū); ثَلَاثِي (sūlāsī), *trilateral root*, ثَلَاثِيِي (sūlāsīyī).

They form their plurals as Turkish words; but Persian names of men and their kinds use the Persian plural also, if judged proper. This is formed by adding an ūstūn vowel, followed by اَنْ, to the final consonant of the singular; as, مَرْد (mèrd), *man*, مَرْدَان (mèrdān). If the singular ends in a vowel, it is changed into consonant ك (Persian), with ūstūn vowel, before the اَنْ of the plural; as, خَوَاجَه (kh’ājè), *master*, خَوَاجَكَان (kh’ājègyān). Singulars ending in vowel و take consonant ی instead of ك; as, خُوبُ رُو (khūb-rū), *a beauty in face*, خُوبُ رُويَان (khūb-rūyān). Those ending in vowel ی change it into consonant ی in like manner; as, سِيَاهِي (slpāhī), *man-at-arms*, سِيَاهِيَان (slpāhlyān). [Persian writers explain this by saying: “The final long vowel is in reality two letters ی rolled into one. One of these is now used as a consonant.”] Other Persian substantives form the plural by adding the syllable هَا hā; as, نَانِهَآ (nān-hā), *loaves, breads*, اَسْبَهَآ (esb-hā), *horses*.



Arabic plurals, of the regular forms for men and women, and of the various irregular forms for these and other things, and also the Arabic duals, are used in Turkish. The dual is formed by adding *ûstûn* followed by *انْ* (*ān*) in the nominative, which becomes *ينْ* (*ēyn*) in the oblique case. The latter is frequently used in Turkish as a nominative; as, *قُطْبْ* (*qūtb*), *pole*, *قُطْبَانْ* (*qūtbān*), *قُطْبَيْنْ* (*qūtbēyn*), *the two poles*.

The regular plural masculine nominative for *men* is formed by adding *ūtūrū* followed by *ونْ* (*ūn*) to the singular. This becomes *ērērē* followed by *ينْ* (*in*) in the oblique case, also used as a nominative in Turkish; the plural feminine is with *ûstûn* followed by *اتْ* (*āt*) in all cases; thus, *مُسْلِمْ* (*mūslīm*), *a Muslim*, *مُسْلِمُونَ* (*mūslīmūn*), *مُسْلِمِينَ* (*mūslīmīn*), *مُسْلِمَاتْ* (*mūslīmāt*), *Muslims*.

The irregular Arabic plurals commonly used in Turkish are of rather numerous forms, and there are many more plural forms used occasionally. These irregular plural Arabic forms are not obtained by adding a letter or letters, vowel or consonant, to the end of the singular, but by varying the vowel or vowels of the word, and by adding letters, consonant or vowel, as the case may be, before, between, or after, the letters of the singular. To enable the student to obtain a fair insight into this very intricate but beautiful system, I have to say, first of all, that a paradigm has been adopted by Arabian grammarians, according to which all such modi-



fications may be effected. They have taken the trilateral **فَعَلَ** (fāʿālā) as the representative of any and every trilateral root-word, and they have modified this root into every shape that can, under any circumstances, be taken by any derivative of any trilateral root in the language. All those modifications, when not made on the vowels alone of the trilateral, are effected by adding *servile letters*, or *a servile letter*, here and there, before, after, and in the midst of, the three radical consonants, with appropriate mutations, in each case, of the vowels, long or short, in the new word. Thus, to speak only of Arabic nouns, substantive or adjective, used in Turkish, we have, in the first place, to learn the *forms* of their singulars (for they all have definite forms), and then the forms of the plurals special to each of these singulars.

To facilitate and systematize this knowledge, the Arabian grammarians have divided the whole language into sections of biliteral, trilateral, quadrilateral, quinqueliteral, &c., roots, which they term, respectively, **ثَنَائِي** (ṣnāʾī), **ثَلَاثِي** (ṣlāṣī), **رَبَاعِي** (rūbāʾī), **خَمَاسِي** (khūmāṣī), **سُدَّاسِي** (ṣūdāṣī), &c. These are the Turkish pronunciations of the terms. I do not remember ever to have seen or heard the expression **أَحَادِي** (ūhādī), which would be the analogous name for uniliteral root; but it may perhaps be found. Of these, the trilaterals form by very far the most important and numerous class, the quadrilaterals coming next. These are represented,

respectively, by the supposititious paradigmatic words **فَعَلَ** (fā'ālā) and **فَعَّلَ** (fā'lēlē).

Every triliteral root is theoretically capable of giving rise to fifteen chapters of derivation, called **بَابٌ** (bāb, *pl.* **أَبْوَابٌ** ʿbbvāb). These chapters are respectively termed : 1, **فَعَلَ بَابِي** (fā'ālā bābī), *the chapter of the triliteral* ; 2, **تَفَعَّلَ بَابِي** (tēf'īl bābī), *the chapter of (the verbal noun) تَفَعُّلٌ* ; 3, **مُفَاعَلَهُ بَابِي** (mūfā'ālē bābī) ; 4, **إِفْعَالَ بَابِي** (if'āl bābī) ; 5, **تَفَعَّلَ بَابِي** (tēfā'āl —) ; 6, **إِفْعَالَ بَابِي** (if'āl —) ; 7, **إِنْفِعَالَ بَابِي** (inf'āl —) ; 8, **إِفْعَالَ بَابِي** (if'āl —) ; 9, **إِفْعَالَ بَابِي** (if'āl —) ; 10, **إِسْتِفْعَالَ بَابِي** (istif'āl —) ; 11, **إِفْعَالَ بَابِي** (if'āl —) ; 12, **إِفْعَالَ بَابِي** (if'āl —) ; 13, **إِفْعَالَ بَابِي** (if'āl —) ; 14, **إِفْعَالَ بَابِي** (if'āl —) ; 15, **إِفْعَالَ بَابِي** (if'āl —). The use of words from the last four chapters is next to unknown in Turkish, if not quite so ; and the use of chapters 9 and 11, **إِفْعَالَ**, **إِفْعَالَ**, is confined to the expression of colours, the second expressing an *intensity of degree*. All the other nine chapters of derivation are constantly met with in Turkish, as nouns, substantive and adjective. Occasionally, even a verb is used ; but as a kind of invocatory interjection. All but the first of these names (which is the form of three out of the six varieties of its verb) is the form of one of the verbal nouns, or of the sole verbal noun, connected with the verb of the chapter ; and each chapter has two adjectives

deriving from it, the active and passive participles of the verb of the chapter. The first, or triliteral, chapter possesses, furthermore, several other special forms of nouns deriving from its verb other than its verbal nouns (which are a kind of infinitive, or noun of action or being, corresponding with our English substantive form in *-ing*, as, *walking, singing, cutting, suffering, lasting*, &c., as acts or states). Of these, I give here merely those frequently met with in Turkish ; and it must be understood, that in this simple triliteral chapter, the various forms of verbal nouns are never all found deriving from one verb ; but certain forms belong to one or more kinds of triliteral verbs, others to other kinds. These *kinds* of verbs, again, are of two sorts ; there are verbs transitive or active, and there are verbs intransitive or neuter ; and certain verbal nouns are more used than others with each of these two kinds. Again, there are the six conjugations of this simple triliteral chapter ; and each conjugation has its preferential form or forms of verbal noun. The Turkish Qāmūs dictionary dilates on this subject more than other works, and much information can be obtained from it, in addition to what should be studied in the “Grammar of the Arabic Language,” by Dr. Wm. Wright, vol. i., p. 109, par. 196, where 36 forms of “*nomina verbi*” are given for this triliteral chapter alone, and several others may be found in De Sacy’s “Grammaire Arabe,” 2nd edition, 1831, vol. i., p. 283, par. 628. Those that are principally

used in Turkish are the following: 1, فَعَلَ (fā'1); 2, فَعَّلَ (fā'āl); 3, فَعِلَ (fī'1); 4, فَعَّلَ (fū'1); their feminines: 5, فَعَّلَهُ (fā'ālè); 6, فَعَّلَهُ (fā'ālè); 7, فَعَّلَهُ (fī'1è); 8, فَعَّلَهُ (fū'1è); the same forms, with an insidious or servile long vowel 1: 9, فَعَالَ (fā'āl); 10, فَعَالَ (fī'āl); 11, فَعَالَ (fū'āl); and their feminines: 12, فَعَالَهُ (fā'ālè); 13, فَعَالَهُ (fī'ālè); 14, فَعَالَهُ (fū'ālè); some of the same, with long vowel و or ی; and their feminines: 15, فَعُولَ (fā'ūl); 16, فَعُولَ (fū'ūl); 17, فَعِيلَ (fā'il); 18, فَعُولَهُ (fā'ūlè); 19, فَعُولَهُ (fū'ūlè); 20, فَعِيلَهُ (fā'ilè); the same, with final servile ان added: 21, فَعَلَّانَ (fā'lān); 22, فَعَلَّانَ (fī'lān); 23, فَعَلَّانَ (fū'lān); the special feminine form: 24, فَعَالِيَّتَ (fā'ālyèt); and the special forms in initial servile م, with their feminines: 25, مَفْعَلَ (mef'āl); 26, مَفْعِلَ (mef'il); 27, مَفْعَلَهُ (mef'ālè); 28, مَفْعِلَهُ (mef'ilè); with the two special forms in initial servile ت, with long vowel 1 intercalated: 29, تَفْعَالَ (tēf'āl); 30, تَفْعَالَ (tīf'āl). Many original substantives and adjectives are of one or other of the forms here given; and in frequent cases it is disputed whether such words are substantives or verbal nouns. The active participle, *nomen agentis*, of this chapter is: 31, فَاعِلَ (fā'il); 32, feminine, فَاعِلَهُ (fā'ilè); and the passive participle, *nomen patientis*, is: 33, مَفْعُولَ (mef'ūl); 34, feminine, مَفْعُولَهُ (mef'ūlè); derivative adjectives are met with, branches of this chapter, as: 35, فَعَلَ (fā'1); 36, فَعِلَ (fā'il); 37, فَعُولَ (fā'ūl; often feminine); 38, فَعِيلَ (fā'il); and the feminine of this last: 39, فَعِيلَهُ (fā'ilè);

the diminutive, substantive or adjective : 40, فَعِيلٌ (fū'āyl); the noun of unity : 41, فَعْلَةٌ (fā'lè); the noun of kind or manner : 42, فَعْلَةٌ (fī'lè); the noun of place and time : 43, مَفْعَلٌ mēf'āl; sometimes mēf'īl and مَفْعَلَةٌ mēf'ālè); the noun of the place of abundance : 44, مَفْعَلَةٌ (mēf'ālè); the noun of instrument and receptacle : 45, مِفْعَلٌ (mif'āl; sometimes مِفْعَالٌ mif'āl, and مِفْعَلَةٌ mif'ālè; rarely مُمْفَعْلٌ mūf'ūl and مُمْفَعَلَةٌ mūf'ūlè); and others still which need not be classified here, though a knowledge of their special forms and meanings, when acquired, assists greatly to an accurate appreciation of Arabic diction, as occasionally met with in Turkish.

The irregular plurals of these forms mostly met with, when the words are substantives and masculine, are : 1, أَفْعَالٌ (ēf'āl); 2, فُؤُولٌ (fū'ūl); 3, فِعَالٌ (fī'āl); 4, أَفْعَالٌ (ēf'āl); 5, أَفْعَلَةٌ (ēf'īlè); 6, فُعَالٌ (fū'āl) and 7, فَعَلَةٌ (fā'ālè; both for the form فاعل fā'il); 8, فُعَالًا (fū'ālā) and 9, أَفْعَلًا (ēf'īlā; both for the form فعيل fā'il); 10, فَعَالًا (fā'ālā; for the form فَعَالٌ fā'āl); when they are feminine in form, either; 11, فَعْلٌ (fī'āl; for the form فَعْلَةٌ fī'lè), or 12, فُعْلٌ (fū'āl; for the form فُعْلَةٌ fū'lè), or 13, أَفْعَالٌ (ēf'āl; as for masculines); 14, فَعَائِلٌ (fā'ā'il; for the forms فَعَالَةٌ fā'ālè, فُؤُولَةٌ fū'ūlè فَعِيلَةٌ fā'ilè); 15, فَوَاعِلٌ (fēvā'il; for the form فَاعِلَةٌ fā'ilè); besides 16, مَفَاعِلٌ (mēfā'il; for the forms mēf'āl, mēf'īl, mif'āl, and their variants); 17, مَفَاعِيلٌ (mēfā'il; for the forms مِفْعَالٌ mif'āl, مِفْعُولٌ mif'ūl); and others more rarely used.



Adjectives masculine derived from this trilateral chapter, much used in Turkish, are of the two forms فَعِيلٌ (fā'il) and أَفْعَلٌ (ʿaf'al); feminines, respectively, فَعِيلَةٌ (fā'ilè) and أَفْعَلَاءُ (fā'ilā, for Arabic فَعَلَاءُ; of أَفْعَلٌ when not comparative) or فُعَلَاءُ (fū'lā, for Arabic فُعَلَى; of the same أَفْعَلٌ when comparative). The plurals of these are: فُعَلَاءُ (fū'ālā) or أَفْعَلَةٌ (ʿaf'ilè), for فَعِيلٌ, as in the substantive; and فُعُلٌ (fū'l), for أَفْعَلٌ and its feminines.

We now come to the derived chapters.

The verbal nouns of the second chapter are: تَفْعِيلٌ (təf'il), تَفْعَالٌ (təf'al; sometimes tlf'al), and تَفْعَلَةٌ (təf'ilè); the plurals of the whole of which are of the form تَفَاعِيلٌ (təfā'il); though the first makes also a quasi-regular plural, تَفْعِيَلَاتٌ (təf'i'āt). Its active participle is مُفْعِلٌ (mufā'il, fem. مُفْعِلَةٌ mufā'ilè); and its passive participle is مَفْعُولٌ (mufā'āl, fem. مَفْعُولَةٌ mufā'ālè), of which the masculine is also used as a noun of time and place.

The verbal nouns of the third chapter are: مُفَاعَلَةٌ (mufā'ālè) and فِعَالٌ (fi'al; this latter only occasionally used); the active participle is مُفَاعِلٌ (mufā'il, fem. مُفَاعِلَةٌ mufā'ilè); the passive participle, مَفَاعَلٌ (mufā'āl, fem. مَفَاعَلَةٌ mufā'ālè, exactly like the first verbal noun).

The verbal noun of the fourth chapter is اِفْعَالٌ (if'al); *a. p.* مُفْعِلٌ (muf'il, fem. مُفْعِلَةٌ); *p. p.* مَفْعُولٌ (muf'āl, fem. مَفْعُولَةٌ).

The fifth chapter has : *v. n.*, تَفَعَّلَ (təfāʿūl); *a. p.* مُتَفَعَّلَ (mūtəfāʿīl, fem. مُتَفَعَّلَةٌ); *p. p.* مُتَفَعَّلًا (mūtəfāʿāl, fem. مُتَفَعَّلَةٌ).

The sixth : *v. n.* تَفَاعَلَ (təfāʿūl); مُتَفَاعَلَ (mūtəfāʿīl, fem. مُتَفَاعَلَةٌ); مُتَفَاعَلًا (mūtəfāʿāl, fem. مُتَفَاعَلَةٌ).

The seventh : اِنْفَعَلَ (infīʿāl), مُنْفَعِلَ (mūnfāʿīl, fem. مُنْفَعِلَةٌ), مُنْفَعِلًا (mūnfāʿāl, fem. مُنْفَعِلَةٌ).

The eighth : اِفْتَعَلَ (iftīʿāl), مُفْتَعِلَ (mūftāʿīl, fem. مُفْتَعِلَةٌ), مُفْتَعِلًا (mūftāʿāl, fem. مُفْتَعِلَةٌ).

The ninth : اِفْعَلَّالَ (ifʿīlāl), *a. p.* مُفْعَلَّ (mūfʿāl, fem. مُفْعَلَّةً mūfʿāllè);  
no *p. p.*

The tenth : اِسْتَفْعَلَ (istīfʿāl), مُسْتَفْعِلَ (mūstəfʿīl, fem. مُسْتَفْعِلَةٌ), مُسْتَفْعِلًا (mūstəfʿāl, fem. مُسْتَفْعِلَةٌ).

The eleventh : اِفْعِيلَالَ (ifʿīlāl), مُفْعَالَّ (mūfʿāl, fem. مُفْعَالَّةً mūfʿāllè);  
no *p. p.*

As to the significations of these chapters, it may be shortly said that when the first is transitive, the second is causative or intensitive; and when the first is intransitive, the second—causative still in the same sense, but not intensitive—is transitive. Sometimes the second has the sense, not of making (a thing) do or be (so or so), but of making (it) out to be (so and so), of deeming, judging, pronouncing, or calling (it so and so); rarely, it unmakes also.

The third chapter denotes reciprocity of the action between



two, or among several or many agents, or an expected reciprocity when one agent only is shown. Thus, *مُكَاتِبَةٌ* (*mukātibah*) a mutually writing letters (to one another), a writing in expectation of a reply; *قَتَالٌ* (*qatāl*) a mutually striving to kill one another, fighting. When the triliteral is expressive of a state, as *حَسَنٌ* (*ḥusn*), a being beautiful or good, the third form expresses an action corresponding with that state in the agent; thus, *مُحَاسِنَةٌ* (*mūḥāsīnah*), a doing good, and acting well, kindly to (the other).

The fourth form is causative, generally, but sometimes intransitive; thus, *أَرْسَلَ* (*irsāl*), a sending (some person or thing); *أَقْبَلَ* (*iqbāl*), an advancing.

The fifth form has the sense of acquiring a state, sometimes by one's own act, sometimes through the act of another; as, *تَكَسَّرَ* (*təkəssar*), a becoming broken. This may be transitive at times; as, *تَعَلَّمَ* (*tā'allam*), a becoming knowing in (a science, art, &c.); i. e., a learning (it).

The sixth form has the idea of reciprocity, something like the third, but more decided, more certain in fact; thus, *تَقَاتَلَ* (*tāqātāl*), a mutually killing one another. Sometimes it has the sense of feigning a state; as, *تَجَاهَلَ* (*tējāhul*), a feigning to be ignorant. Sometimes, again, it expresses a repeated act; thus, *تَقَاَزَا* (*tāqāzā*), a dunning, repeatedly demanding the fulfilment and discharge (of some incumbent act or debt).

The seventh and eighth forms, like the fifth, imply the acquisition of a state, either by one's own act, or as the result of the act of another; thus, **اِنْفَعَالٌ** (Inffāl), *a being acted upon, affected, hurt, wounded, vexed* (by another's act); **اِنْتِظَارٌ** (Intizār) *a (becoming) looking forward* (for the occurrence of an event). Sometimes the eighth form is transitive in the sense of *acquiring*; thus, **اِفْتِرَاسٌ** (İftirās), *an acquiring* (game) *by hunting*; or, *a seeking to acquire*; as, **اِلْتِمَاسٌ** (İltimās), *a seeking to obtain* (a favour) *by* (morally) *feeling one's way* (by touching, groping, requesting); *a requesting*.

The ninth and eleventh express two degrees of state as to colour, and sometimes as to defects; the eleventh denoting intensity of that state; thus, **اِحْمِرَارٌ** (İhmīrār), *a being red*; *redness*; **اِحْمِيرَارٌ** (İhmīrār), *a being very red*; **اِعْوِجَاجٌ** (I'vījāj), *a being crooked*; *crookedness*; **اِعْوِيْجَاجٌ** (I'vījāj), *a being very crooked*; *anfractuosity*.

The tenth usually expresses *a trying to get* (the act or state signified by the first form); as, **اِسْتِفْسَارٌ** (İstİfsār), *an asking for an explanation of* (a matter). Sometimes it has, like the second, the sense of *deeming* or *judging* (a thing) *to be* (what the first form signifies); as, **اِسْتِثْقَالٌ** (İstİsqāl), *a deeming* (a person or thing) *heavy, disagreeable, tedious*. And sometimes it means *an acquiring a state*, expressed by the first form; thus, **اِسْتِشْفَا** (İstİshfā), *a becoming restored to health*. And again, it

occasionally has the sense of the first form ; as, اِسْتَعْدَادٌ (istl'dād), *a being or becoming ready prepared ; readiness* (external or mental); *mental capacity and quickness in acquiring dexterity or knowledge.*

Quadriliteral roots have but four forms ; of which only two are perceptibly used in Turkish, the first and second. The first has two verbal nouns, figured paradigmatically by فَعْلَالٌ (fā'lélè), and فَعْلَالٌ (fi'lāl); the second, but one, figured by تَفَعُّلٌ (tèfā'lāl); سَلْطَنَاتٌ (sāltānāt) may serve as an instance of a verbal noun of the first form, and تَسْلُطُنٌ (tèsāltùn) as an example of the second.

It would occupy too much space to detail here the modifications of these results arising in the case of roots where the second and third radicals are identical, or of those in which one, two, or all three of the radicals belong to the trio أ, و, ي, out of which the long vowels, the *letters of prolongation*, spring. These details should be studied in Wright's, or in De Sacy's Arabic Grammar. But it is necessary to remark that these Arabic verbal nouns belong equally to the active and passive voice of their verbs; so that, as in English, the same word, فَتَحَ fèt-h for instance, will sometimes mean a *conquering*, at others a *being conquered*, just as our word *conquest* does. This last rule holds good with Persian verbal nouns, not much used in Turkish. It is not so, however, with Turkish verbal nouns, excepting, to a slight extent, with the

present, as in *ما* *mâ*, *mè*; and this for the simple reason that every passive Turkish verb has its own special verbal nouns complete, present, past, and future.

Every Turkish, Persian, and Arabic substantive has its diminutive, the two latter seldom used in Ottoman phrases.

The Turkish diminutive substantive is formed usually by suffixing the syllable *جُكْ* (*jlk*) or *جُقْ* (*jîq*) to the word, of whatever origin, whether it end in a consonant or vowel. Thus, *أَرِيكْجُكْ* (*êrîkjlk*) *a little plum*, *إِنْبِجْجُكْ* (*ltjlk*) *a little dog*, *كِتَابْجُكْ* (*kltâbjlk* or *كِتَابْجُقْ* *kltâbjîq*) *a little book*, *كَاتِبْجُكْ* (*kyâtîb-jlk*) *a little clerk*, *دَوَهْجُكْ* (*dêvêjlk*) *a little camel*, *أُتُوجْجُكْ* (*ûtûjûk*), *a little flat-iron*, *كَدِيحْجُكْ* (*kêdljlk*) *a little cat*, *أَلْمَاجْجُقْ* (*êlmâjîq*) *a little apple*, *پَاشَاْجُقْ* (*pâshâjîq*) *a little pasha*, *پَادِشَاهْجُقْ* (*pâdl-shâhjîq*) *a little monarch*, *قَبْرُوجْجُقْ* (*qâpûjûq*) *a little door or gate*, *خَوَاجَهْجُقْ* (*khôjâjîq*) *a little professor*, *قَارِيْجُقْ* (*qârîjîq*) *a little woman*.

In words ending with *كُ* or *قُ*, after a movent consonant, it would form a cacophony to repeat these letters for the diminutive. The less important is therefore sacrificed to euphony, and omitted in the diminutive, a vowel letter usually taking its place: *كُورْجُكْ* (*kyûrêk*), *كُورَهْجُكْ* (*kyûrêjlk*), *a little shovel or oar*; *چُوجْجُقْ* (*chôjûq*), *چُوجُوجْجُقْ* (*chôjûjûq*), *a little child*.

This form of the diminutive is sometimes modified into that of *جَكْزُ* (*jêylz*), *جَغْزُ* (*jâghlz*); thus, *أَوْجَكْزُ* (*êvjêylz*) *a little house*,

قِيَزْجَغِرْ (qīzjāghīz), *a little girl*. As is seen, the former èsèrè vowel of the ج in the diminutive has now become an ūstūn, as the èsèrè has been passed on to the ك or ق, modified into Turkish ك (*y* value) or غ (soft *gh* value). Euphony requires it.

These diminutives are used as terms of endearment also, exactly as in German, and as our nursery vocabulary says, *daddy, mammy, granny, aunty, doggy, horsey, &c.*; only, in Turkish, the method is of universal application, by all classes, not by children only.

The Persian diminutive always ends in چَه (chè); as, پَا (pā), پَاچَه (pāchè), or in كْ preceded by an ūstūn vowel; as, كَنِيزْ (kēnīz), كَنِيزَكْ (kēnīzèk).

The Arabic diminutive also makes its first vowel ūtūrū, and the next vowel ūstūn, followed by a quiescent consonantal ي, whatever may be the vowels or quiescences of the original word; as, حَسَن (hāsān), حُسَيْن (hūsēyn); حَصْن (hīsn), حَصِين (hūsāyn); &c.

The Persian and Arabic diminutive applies equally to substantives and adjectives. The Arabic rule has many modifications in details. But as these Persian and Arabic diminutives are taken into Ottoman use as original words, enough has been said on their subject for the present purpose.

SECTION II. *The Noun Adjective.*

As a general rule, the adjective, in Turkish, is invariable, having no gender, number, case, or degrees of comparison; and this, whether the word be of Turkish, Arabic, or Persian origin. It always precedes the substantive qualified; as, *بُيُوكْ آدَامْ* (blyûk âdâm), *a great man*, *بُيُوكْ آدَامْلَارْ* (blyûk âdâmlâr), *great men*; *بُيُوكْ اِيْنَكْلَرْ* (blyûk inêklêr), *big cows*.

But the Persian form of phrase is also much used (especially in writing), by which an adjective of Persian or Arabic origin follows the substantive qualified; such adjective remaining in the singular after a Persian substantive plural, the substantive qualified always taking an *èsère* of subjection to join it to the adjective; thus, *مَرْدَانِ بُزُرْگْ* (mêrdânî bûzûrg), *great men*; *اَعْمَلْهَائِيْ نِيَكْ* ('âmelhâyî nîk), *good works*.

If, in this Persian construction, both words are Arabic, and the substantive is a feminine singular, or an irregular plural of any kind, the adjective must be put in the feminine singular, or in an irregular plural form; as, *اَسَاكِرِ مُنْتَظِمَهْ* ('âsâkiri muntâzîmê), *regular troops*, *سَلَاطِيْنِ اِعْظَامْ* (sêlâtîni 'îzâm), *great Sultans*.

Persian adjectives have three degrees of comparison, more or less in use in Turkish composition. The comparative is formed by adding the syllable *تَرْ* (têr) to the end of the posi-



tive; and the superlative, by adding the syllables تَرِينَ (tèrīn); but these never qualify preceding substantives, being only used as substantive members of phrases, or to qualify a following substantive; thus, بَهْتَرِينَ وَسَائِلِ نَجَاتٍ (blhtèrīn vèsā-llī nējāt), *the best of the means of salvation*; (blhtèrīn vèsā-llī nējāt), *the best means of salvation*.

Arabic adjectives have but two degrees of comparison. Whatever the form of the positive, the comparative is of the form أَفْعَل (éf'āl). This is used, in Persian construction, more as an exaggeration than as a degree of comparison, more as a substantive than an adjective. If followed by a substantive singular, it is a superlative with the sense of *very*, *extremely*, *exceedingly*, and the like; thus, أَحْسَنَ وَسِيلَةٍ نَجَاتٍ (āhsānī vèsilèh nējāt), *a very good means of salvation*. If the following substantive be in the plural, the adjective is a superlative, with the sense of *the most*.....; as, أَحْسَنَ وَسَائِلِ نَجَاتٍ (āhsānī vèsā-llī nējāt), *the best of the means of salvation*.

If an adjective be used as a substantive, it admits the plural and the prepositions, as substantives; thus, اِيُولُر (iyûlër), *the good*; اِيُولُرْكَ (iyûlërîk), *of the good*, &c., &c.

Every Turkish adjective, besides its positive signification, betokens, on occasions, the comparative, the superlative, and an excess of the quality it expresses, which we explain by employing the adverb *too* before the word. Thus, بِيُولُك (blyûk),



*large, larger, largest, too large* ; صِجَاقٌ (sijâq), *hot, hotter, hottest, too hot* ; صُغْرُقٌ (soghruq), *cold, colder, coldest, too cold* ; &c.

The Persian compound adjective, much used in Turkish, in the positive degree only, is of many kinds. Some are compounded of two substantives, one or both of which may be Arabic or Persian, never Turkish ; as, جَمَّ جَنَابٌ (jèm-jènâb), *majestic as Jemshîd* ; آصَفَ تَدْبِيرٌ (āsâf-tèdbîr), *Asaph in counsel* ; شَكْرَبُ (shèkèr-lèb), *sugar-lipped* ; عَدَالَتُ دَسْتَكَا (‘ādālèt-dèstgyāb), *a very loom of justice (i. e., just)* ; others of an adjective followed by a substantive ; as, سَبْكَپَايِ (sèbûk-pāy), *light of foot, light-footed* ; or a substantive followed by an adjective ; as, دِلْ تَشْنَه (dlî-tîshnè), *thirsty-hearted (i. e., ardently desirous)* ; or a substantive preceded by هَم (hèm) ; as, هَمَّ أَشْيَانَه (hèm-āshyānè), *of the same nest* ; هَمَّ جِنْس (hèm-jîns), *of the same genus* ; هَمَّ شَهْرِی (hèm-shèhrî), *of the same town or country, a fellow-countryman* ; of a substantive followed by وَش (vèsh), *like* ; as, پَرِی وَش (pèrî-vèsh), *fairy-like* ; of a substantive followed by رَنَک (râng), فَاَم (fām), or کُوَن (gyūn), all signifying *colour* ; as, سَبْز رَنَک (sèbz-râng), *green-coloured* ; زَمْزَمَ فَاَم (zûmûr-râd-fām), *emerald-coloured* ; کَنْدَم کُوَن (gèndûm-gyūn), *wheat-coloured (i. e., dark-complexioned, brown)* ; of a substantive followed by شِیرِیَن کَار (shîrîn-kyār), کَر (gèr), بَانَ (bān), or دَار (dār) ; as, شِیرِیَن کَار (shîrîn-kyār), *sweet-mannered* ; آفَرِید کَار (āfèrîd-gyār), *creative*

(i. e., *creator*) ; زَرَّكَر (zèr-gèr), *goldworker, goldsmith* ; بَاقَان (bāg-bān), *garden-keeper* (i. e., *gardener*) ; مَهْرْدَار (mũhr-dār), *seal-keeper* ; or followed by دَان (dān), زَار (zār), سَار (sār), or اِسْتَان (istān), all names of special places ; as, قَلَمْدَان (qalēm-dān), *a pen-case* ; كَلَزَار (gyāl-zār), *a flower-garden, a flowery mead* ; كُوَهْسَار (kyüh-sār), *mountainous district* ; عَرَبْسْتَان (‘ārābstān), *Arabia* ; or a substantive repeated ; as, چَاکچَاک (chāk-chāk), imitative of the sound of repeated blows with axe or sword ; the same, or two different substantives, with ا placed between them ; as, چَاکچَاک (chākyā-chāk), same signification, سَرَاپَا (sēr-ā-pā), *from head to foot* ; or with تَ or تَ in place of the ا ; as, سَرَتَاپَا (sēr-tā-pā), same sense ; سَرَتَسَر (sēr-tè-sèr), *from end to end, from beginning to end* ; or with اَنْ in سَبَانَرُوز (shébān-rūz), *night and day* (which is unique), شَبَانَه رُوز (shébānè-rūz), meaning : *a whole night and day, all night and all day, twenty-four hours, or several nights and days in one succession* ; or with some other Persian preposition between the two ; as, پَیْدِرَبِی پَیْدِرَبِی (pèy-dèr-pèy), *step by step, gradatim* ; دَسْتَبَرَدَسْت (dèst-bèr-dèst), *hand on hand, hands crossed* ; سینه بَسینه (sīnè-bè-sīnè), *breast to breast* ; دُوشَادُوش (dūsh-à-dūsh), *shoulder to shoulder, back to back* ; سَرَبَهْر (sèr-bè-mũhr), *with the head (or mouth of a bag, bottle, &c.) sealed up* ; or with a substantive and compound adjective ; as, بَخْتَبَرَكَشْتَه (bākht-bèr-gèshtè), *whose luck is reversed* ; or even

four words combined; as, سَرْفَلَكَ كَشِيدَه (sèr-bè-fèlèk-kèshidè), *whose head is lifted up to the very spheres*; besides many other varieties; especially the two privatives in بِي (bī), *without*, and نَا (nā), *not*; as, بِي آدَبْ (bī-èdèb), *without education or manners, unmannerly, impolite*; نَابِينَا (nā-binā), *not seeing, sightless, blind*.

Some Arabic expressions may be regarded as compound epithets in Turkish and Persian; as, صَاحِقِرَانْ (sāhīb-qīrān), *lord of the conjunction* (i. e., *the master of the age*); وَلِي نِعْمَتْ (velī-nl'mèt), *associate of benefits* (i. e., *a benefactor*); expressions formed of ذُو (zū), ذَاتْ (zāt), أَهْلْ (èhl), and أَرْبَابْ (èrbāb), all of which imply *possession*; as, ذُو ذُوَابَهْ (zū-zū'ābè), *possessed of a forelock or topknot*, and ذُو ذُنَابَهْ (zū-zū'nābè), *possessed of a following* (i. e., *a comet*); ذَاتُ الْجَنْبِ (zātū-'l-jènb, vulg. sātljān), *the possessor of the side* (i. e., *pleurisy*); or in Persian construction; as, أَهْلْ عِرْضْ (èhl-'īrz), *possessed of honour or virtue, honorable, honest, virtuous*; أَرْبَابِ مَسْنَدْ (èrbābī-mèsnèd), *those who possess the chief seat* (i. e., *high dignitaries*); or an adjective qualified with غَيْرْ (gāyr), *other*; as, غَيْرِ مَحْدُودْ (gāyri-māhdūd), *other than circumscribed* (i. e., *unlimited, undefined*); or an Arabic verb in the aorist made negative with لَا (lā), *not*; as, لَا يُحْصَا (lā-yuhsā), *not to be counted, innumerable*; لَا يُعَدُّ (lā-yu'add), *untold, innumerable*; لَا يَمُوتْ (lā-yèmūt), *who dies not, immortal*; لَا يَتَجَزَّأْ (lā-yètèjèzzā), *not to be subdivided, indivisible*; or an

Arabic adjective followed by a definite article and substantive; as, أَبَدَى الدَّوَامَ (èbèdlyyû-'d-dèvām), *eternal in duration*; قَوَى البَنِيَانُ (qâvlyyyû-'l-bûnyān), *strong in build*; &c., &c., &c.

Every Turkish adjective is also an adverb; that is to say, that, without any modification of form, the Turkish adjective qualifies verbs as well as substantives; thus, كُوْزِلْ أَتْ (gyûzèl ât), *a beautiful stallion*; كُوْزِلْ يُوْرُمُكْ (gyûzèl yûrûmek), *to walk gracefully*. The same is the case with Persian adjectives, whether used in Turkish or in Persian phrases. Arabic adjectives, as Arabic substantives, require to be put in their own accusative case indefinite when used as adverbs; as, فَعَلًا (fi'lân), *by act*; حَسَنًا (hâsanân), *beautifully*. Arabic substantives are also sometimes used as Turkish adverbs by being put in their own genitive, indefinite or definite, as may be, and preceded by an Arabic preposition; as, عَنْ غَفْلَةٍ ('ân gâflètln), *by inadvertence*; عَلَى التَّوَالِي ('âlè-'t-tèvālī), *in continued succession, successively*; فِي الْحَقِيقَةِ (fi-'l-hâqlqâ), *in reality, really, truly*; بِالدَّفْعَاتِ (bl-'d-dèfâ'ât), *on several occasions, repeatedly*; لِسَبَبٍ (li-sèbèbln), *for a reason*; &c.

As with substantives, so also every Turkish adjective has its diminutive, formed by the addition of the suffix جَه (jè, jâ), *-ish*, to the word, whether this end in a consonant or vowel; as, يَشِلْ (yèshlī), *green*, يَشِلْجَه (yèshlljè), *greenish, somewhat green*; قِزِلْ (qizīl) *red*, قِزِلْجَه (qizīljâ) *reddish*; يُوْكْ (blyûk)

*large*, بَيُوكْجَه (blyûkjè) *largish*; اُفَاقْ (ûfâq) *small*, اُفَاقْجَه (ûfâqjâ) *smallish*; اِيرِى (îrî) *large*, اِيرِيجَه (îrîjè) *largish*; قَرَه (qârâ) *black*, قَرَهْجَه (qârâjâ) *blackish*; قُورُ (qûrû) *dry*, قُورُجَه (qûrûjâ) *dryish*. A modification of this form, dictated by the principle of euphony, is used for the words بِيُوكْ, كُچُوكْ, اُفَاقْ, by substituting a final كْ or قْ for the ه, and suppressing those letters at the end of the radical word, as for substantives; thus, بِيُوكْجَه (blyûjèk), *largish*. A further conformity with the sense of euphony, avoiding two اَوْسْتُونْ vowels in succession, makes اُفَاقْجَه (ûfâjîq) *smallish*, and كُچُوكْجَه (kûchûjûk) *smallish*; this last being doubly euphonic.

These diminutive adjectives, as in every language, often express in Turkish the reverse of diminution in the quality they represent, being in fact exaggeratives in sense, and meaning *very, exceedingly, extremely, &c.*; as, جَسُورْجَه آدَمْ دِرْ (jèsûrjâ âdâm dîr), *he is a bravish man (i. e., a very brave man)*.

### SECTION III. *The Numerals.*

Turkish, Arabic, and Persian numerals, cardinal and ordinal, are used in Ottoman. Arabic fractions are also used as far as one-tenth. In this sketch, however, the five sorts of Turkish numerals alone are explained. These are the cardinal, ordinal, distributive, fractional, and indefinite numbers.



The simple Turkish cardinal numbers are : *بِرْ* (blr) *one*, *اِيكِ* (ikl) *two*, *اُچْ* (âch) *three*, *دُرْتْ* (dûrt) *four*, *بَشْ* (besh) *five*, *اَلْتِ* (âlti) *six*, *يَدِ* (yedî) *seven*, *سَكِزْ* (sêkîz) *eight*, *طُقُوزْ* (dòqûz) *nine*, *اُونْ* (òn) *ten*, *يَكِرْمِ* (yîlîrml) *twenty*, *اوتوزْ* (òtûz), *thirty*, *قِرْقْ* (qîrq) *forty*, *اَلِ* (èll) *fifty*, *اَلْتِمِشْ* (âltmîsh) *sixty*, *يَتْمِشْ* (yèt-mîsh) *seventy*, *سَكْسَانْ* (sêksân) *eighty*, *طُقْسَانْ* (dòqsân) *ninety*, *يُوزْ* (yûz) *a hundred*, *بِيكْ* (blî) *a thousand*. The two substantives, *يُوكْ* (yûk), *a hundred thousand*, and *مِلْيُونْ* (mlîyòn), *a million*, are also used ; but they are not true numerals. They are names of aggregates, and require the numerals before them ; as, *بِرْ يُوكْ* (blr yûk), *one hundred thousand*, *بِرْ مِلْيُونْ* (blr mlîyòn) *one million* ; and so on for higher numbers, *اِيكِ يُوكْ*, &c. The French numerals *بِلْيُونْ* (blîyòn), *تِرِيلْيُونْ* (tîrîl-yòn), &c., are sometimes used.

The compound Turkish cardinal numerals are uniformly built up by putting the units after the tens up to 99, and by placing the word *يُوزْ* before the simple or compound expression up to 199 ; then by adding the units from 2 to 9 before *يُوزْ* up to 999 ; next by using *بِيكْ* before these simples or compounds up to 1999 ; and finally, by again using the simples or compounds before *بِيكْ* up to 999,999 ; thus, *اُونُورْ* (òn-blr) *eleven*, *يَكِرْمِ اِيكِ* (yîlîrml ikl) *twenty-two*, *يُوزْ اوتوزْ اُچْ* (yûz òtûz âch) *one hundred and thirty-three*, *بِيكْ سَكِزْ يُوزْ قِرْقْ بَشْ* (blî

sèkiz yâz qırq besh) *one thousand eight hundred and forty-five*,  
 بَشْ يُوْزْ اَلْتَمِشْ سَكِزْ بِيْكَ يُوْزْ اَوْنَدُرْت (besh yûz âltmîsh sèkiz blñ yûz  
 òn dârt) 568,114, اُوْجْ مِلْيُونْ يَدِيْ يُوْكَ طُقْسَانْ اِيْكَى بِيْكَ اُوْجِيُوْزْ اَلَلِيْ اَلْتِيْ (ûch milyòn, yèdî yûk, dòqsân îkî blñ, ûch yûz, èlli âtlî)  
 3,792,356. It will be noticed that no conjunction enters these  
 combinations. When the foreign expression مِلْيُونْ, or the  
 treasury word يُوْكَ is not used, the native method of expressing  
 multiples of يُوْزْ بِيْكَ is to state the simple or compound  
 number of such multiple, and then to intercalate the word  
 كَرَّةْ (kèrrè) *times*, before the word يُوْزْ بِيْكَ ; as, يَدِيْ كَرَّةْ يُوْزْ بِيْكَ  
 (yèdî kèrrè yûz blñ) *seven times one hundred thousand*, 700,000 ;  
 دُرْتْ يُوْزْ اَلَلِيْ اِيْكَى كَرَّةْ يُوْزْ بِيْكَ (dûrt yûz èlli îkî kèrrè yûz blñ)  
 45,200,000.

The Turkish interrogative cardinal numeral is قَاحْ (qâch)  
*how many ?*

The cardinal numerals are adjectives ; but, like all adjectives, may be used as substantives, and declined. Even the interrogative قَاحْ is used as a substantive when enquiring  
 “ *what number ?* ” or “ *what is it o'clock ?* ” or “ *at what price ?* ”  
 or “ *what is the day of the month ?* ” Thus : قَاحْ دِيْدِيْكَزْ (qâch dîdîñîz) “ *how many did you say ?* ” سَاعَتْ قَاحْ كَلْدِيْ (sâ'ât qâchâ kâldî) “ *to how many (hours) has the clock come ?* ” قَاحْ وِيْرِيُورْسِيْنْ (qâchâ vèrlyòrsûn) “ *at how much art thou selling (it, them) ?* ”



آيَكْ قَاجِي دِرْ (āyīñ qāchī dīr) “the how-manyeth of the month is it?”

The Persian compound cardinals place the higher elements first, as in Turkish and English; but the conjunction و is introduced between each two members; as, هَزَارُ وُدُوِستُ وِشَصْتُ وِهَفْتُ (hēzār ū dāwist ū shāst ū hēft), *a thousand, two hundred, and sixty-seven*.

The Arabic compound cardinals take the conjunction و between each pair also; but the lower elements stand first; as, سَنَهُ تِسْعُ وِخَمْسِينَ وِمِائَتَيْنِ وِأَلْفُ (sēnè-i tīs' ū khāmsīn ū mbètēyn ū ʿelf) *the year one thousand two hundred and fifty-nine*, expressed in Turkish, بِیَكْ اِیَكِیُوزْ اِلّی طُقُوزْ سَنَهْسِی (bīñ iklyūz elli dōqūz sēnēsī).

The Turkish ordinal numbers are formed by adding an èsèrè to the last quiescent consonant of the cardinal, simple or compound, followed by the termination نِجِی; as, بِرِنِجِی (bīrīnjī) *first*, اُتُوزُنِجِی (ūtūzūnjū) *thirtieth*, یُزُنِجِی (yūzūnjū) *hundredth*, بِلِنِجِی (bīlīnjī) *thousandth*, اِلّی سَکِزِنِجِی, اِلّی سَکِزِنِجِی, اِلّی سَکِزِنِجِی, اِلّی سَکِزِنِجِی. But, in the numbers that end in vowel ی, this is suppressed before the same termination; as, اِیَکِنِجِی (ikīnjī) *second*, اَلْتِنِجِی (āltīnjī) *sixth*, یَدِنِجِی (yēdīnjī) *seventh*, یِکِرْمِنِجِی (yīkrīminjī) *twentieth*, اَلْلِنِجِی (ēllīnjī) *fiftieth*. The cardinal دُرْتُ changes its final into د before the ordinal termination; as, اُونْ دُرْدُنِجِی (ōn-dūrdūnjū) *fourteenth*.

The Arabic and Persian ordinals are frequently used, and may be found in the lexicons, &c.

The Turkish distributive numbers are formed from the cardinals by making their last quiescent consonant movent with *âstân*, and then adding a quiescent *ر* to the word; as, *بِرَر* (*blrèr*), *بَشَر* (*bèshèr*), *أَوْتُوَزَر* (*òtdüzèr*); *يُوَزَر* (*yûzèr*), *بِلْنَر* (*blñèr*). Their sense is expressed in English, which has no such numerals, by the words *each* and *apiece*; the foregoing examples will thus be rendered: *one each, five apiece, thirty each, a hundred each, a thousand each*. The cardinal *دُرَّت* becomes *دُرْدَر* (*dârdèr*) *four apiece*.

When the cardinal ends with a vowel, the syllable *شَر* (*shèr*) is suffixed to form the distributive; as, *إِكِلْشَر* (*iklshèr*) *two apiece*, *أَلْتِشَر* (*âltishèr*) *six each*, *يَدِلْشَر* (*yèdlshèr*) *seven apiece*, *يِلْزِلْمِلْشَر* (*yilyrlmlshèr*) *twenty each*, *أَلْلِشَر* (*èllshèr*) *fifty each*.

In the case of more than one hundred or thousand, it is the cardinal that designates their number that receives the distributive suffix; as, *إِكِلْشَر يُوَز* (*iklshèr yûz*) *two hundred each*, *بَشَر بِلْن* (*bèshèr blñ*) *five thousand apiece*. And in compound numbers the distributive suffixes are added to the numbers of thousands, of hundreds, and of final units or tens, to indicate one distribution; thus, *بَشَر يُوَز يِلْزِلْمِلْ بِرَر* (*bèshèr yûz yilyrlml blrèr*) *five hundred and twenty-one each*, *سَكِرَزَر يِكْ يَدِلْشَر يُوَز فَرْقْ إِكِلْشَر* (*sèklüzèr blñ, yèdlshèr yûz, qîrq lklshèr*), *8,742 apiece*; *يُوَز أَلْلِشَر* (*yûz èllshèr*), *150 each*.

The Turkish fractional numbers are very simple. The number of the denominator in the locative, and followed by the number of the numerator is the form ; as, *إِكِيدَه بِرْ* (ikidê bir) *in two* (parts), *one*; i. e.  $\frac{1}{2}$ , *the half*; *بَشْدَه اِيكِي* (bêshdê iki) *in five, two*; i. e.  $\frac{2}{5}$ , *two-fifths*. Sometimes one of the synonyms *پَايْ* (pây), *جُزْ* (jûz), *قِسْمْ* (qîsm), *حِصَّه* (hîssâ) *part*, is added after each numeral of the fraction ; as, *اِيكِي پَايْدَه بِرْ پَايْ* (iki pâydâ, bir pây) *in two parts, one part*.

The Arabic fractional numbers are also used up to ten. Excepting the word *نِصْفْ* (nisf) *a half, the half*, they are all of the form *فُعْلْ*; thus, *ثُلُثْ* (sûls, vulg. sûlûs) *a third*, *رُبْعْ* (rûb') *a fourth*, *خُمْسْ* (khûms) *a fifth*, *سُدُسْ* (sûds) *a sixth*, *سَبْعْ* (sûb') *a seventh*, *ثَمْنْ* (sûmn) *an eighth*, *تَسْعْ* (tâs') *a ninth*, *عَشْرْ* ('ûshr, vulg. 'ûshûr) *a tenth, a tithe*. The dual of *ثُلُثْ* is used, *ثُلُثَانْ* (sûlsân) *two-thirds*; but for all the others a Turkish numerator is used ; as, *اُوجْ رُبْعْ* ('ûch rûb') *three quarters*, *اِيكِي خُمْسْ* (iki khûms) *two-fifths*, *بَشْ تَسْعْ* (bêsh tâs') *five-ninths*, &c.

There are two special Turkish adjectives and one Turkish substantive to express *half*. One of the adjectives, *يَارِمْ* (yârîm), and the substantive, *يَارِي* (yârî), signify *the half* (of one sole thing ; as, *يَارِمْ أَلْمَا* (yârîm elmâ) *half an apple, a half apple*; *أَلْمَانِ يَارِيسِي* (elmanî yârîsî), *the half of an (or of the) apple*. The other adjective, *بُوجُوقْ* (bûchûq), is used after some whole

number, never alone ; as, *بِرْ بُجُوقُ أَلْمَا* (blr bûchûq èlmâ) *an apple and a half*, *اِيكِي بُجُوقُ سَاعَت* (ikl bûchûq sâ'ât) *two hours and a half*.

When a complex fractional number consisting of an integer and a fraction other than *one-half* has to be expressed, the Turkish or Arabic fractions are used, the conjunction *وَ* or the preposition *اَيْلَه* being introduced between the integer and the fraction ; as, *اِيكِي اَيْلَه بِرْ رُبْع* or *اِيكِي وَ بِرْ رُبْع* *two and one-fourth*. When the Turkish fraction is used, the numeral *بِرْ* in the genitive is also introduced before the fraction ; as, *بَشْ اَيْلَه بِرْ سَكِرْزَه اُوجِي* *five, and three-eighths of one*.

The indefinite numerals are : *هَر* (hèr) *every* ; *هَرْ بِلِرْ* (hèr blr) *every one, each* ; *هَيْچ* (hlch) *no, none* ; *هَيْچ بِلِرْ* (hlch blr), *no* ; *بَعْض* (bâ'zî) *some* ; *أَكْثَر* (èksèr) *the most part* ; *بِرْ قَاح* (blr qâch) *some, a few* ; *آز* (âz) *few* ; *جُوق* (chòq) *many* ; *بِرْ آز* (blr âz) *a few, a little* ; *بِرْ جُوق* (blr chòq) *a great many, a great quantity* ; &c. Of these, *هَر* is always an adjective ; the rest are adjectives and substantives.

There is a small series of Turkish numerals of a peculiar nature, from *اِيكِيْز* (iklîz), *twin, twins*, through *اُوجِيْز* (ûchûz) *triple, a trine*, *دُرْدِيْز* (dûrdûz) *fourfold*, to *بَشِيْز* (bèshlîz) *five-fold*, and perhaps on to *اُونِيْز* (òndîz) *ten-fold*. Adjectives are formed

from these in لُو ; as, اِيَكِيَزْلُو (iklzlū), *possessed of twins, of twin* (branches, &c.) ; اُوْجِيَزْلُو (ūchūzlū) *with three* (lambs, branches, &c.) ; &c.

The written digits are : ١ 1, ٢ 2, ٣ 3, ٤ 4, ٥ 5, ٦ 6, ٧ 7, ٨ 8, ٩ 9, ٠ 0. With these, compound numbers are written as in English, from left to right ; as, ٢٥ 25, ١٦٠ 160, ٣٤٠٩ 3409, ٧٨٠٠٣٠٤٦ 78003046, &c.

In dates, the thousand, and generally the hundreds, of the year of the Hijra are omitted, as also the dots of the letters ; thus, س٩٦ stands for س١٢٩٦ (sèné blñ iklyûz dôqsân âltî) *in the year* (of the Hijra) 1296 ; في ٢١ دا س٩٧ (fî ylylrmî blr zā, sèné 97) *on the 21st Zi'l-Qa'da, '97* (A.H.).

The signs for the months, in dates, are : م, for مُحَرَّم ; ص, for جَمَادِي الْأَوَّل ; ر, for رَبِيعُ الْآخِر ; ح, for رَبِيعُ الْأَوَّل ; ر, for رَبِيعُ الْآخِر ; ب, for رَجَب ; س, for شَعْبَان ; ر, for رَمَضَانَ ; ح, for رَمَضَانَ ; د, for ذِي الْحِجَّة. The day always precedes the sign of the month ; and the first day is termed غَرَّة (gurrè), while the thirtieth is named سَلَخ (sélkh) ; as, في ٢٥ ص س٨٨ في ٢٥ م س٨٨ ; all dots being omitted in these shortened numeral dates. Not so, however, when the date is written out in full words ; as, اِسْهُبُوكَ اِيَكِيُوْز طُقْسَانَ (ishbû blñ iklyûz dôqsân dôqûz sèné1 hijriyyés1 mäh-1 mûhârrèmlnñ òn

bēshlnjl pēnshēnbh gyānū) *This day of Thursday, the 15th of the month of Muharrem, of the Hijra year 1299.*

#### SECTION IV. *The Pronoun.*

The Turkish personal pronoun has no distinction of gender : بِن (bēn) *I*, سَن (sān, not sēn) *thou*, أُو (ō ; in writing, generally, اُو) *he, she, it* ; and their plurals : بَز (blz) *we*, سَز (slz) *you*, اَنَلَر (ānlār, ōnlār) *they*.

In politeness, بَز and سَز are used instead of بِن and سَن. They then have their own plurals : بَزَلَر (blzlēr), سَزَلَر (slzlēr), which cannot be expressed in English. These are even used as singulars, by the over-polite. The third person plural is used, in the same way, out of politeness, for the singular, as is practised in Italian ; but it has not its plural. The word كَنَدِي (kēndī) *self*, is a kind of common pronoun, of all the persons, singular and plural. It is specialized by the possessives.

The personal pronouns, singular and plural, are declined in the same way as the nouns substantive, excepting that some of them have a special genitive,—all but those of the second person, singular and plural. These genitives are : بَنِم (bēnlm) *of me, my* ; سَنِك (sānlñ) *of thee, thy* ; اَنِك (ānlñ, ōnlñ) *of him, her, it ; his, her, its* ; بَزِم (blzlñ) *of us, our* ; سَزِك (slzlñ) *of you, your* ; اَنَلَرِك (ānlārñ, ōnlārñ) *of them, their*. But, to take either



of the prepositions اَيْلَهُ, اِجْوَنَ, after their singulars, they must be put in the genitive, all but the third person plural; as, اَنْلَرِ اَيْلَهُ for him, her, it, اِجْوَنَ اَنْلَرِ اَيْلَهُ for me, اَيْلَهُ سِرْكَ with you, اِجْوَنَ اَنْلَرِ اَيْلَهُ for him, her, it, اَنْلَرِ اَيْلَهُ with them.

These genitives are used, *when required*, to emphasize and corroborate the possessive pronoun of the same number and person. They are never used alone, without their possessives to corroborate; thus, بَابَامْ (bābām) my father (not my mother, &c.), بَنِمْ بَابَامْ (bēnlm bābām) my father (not your father, or his father).

The possessive pronouns, too, have no distinction of gender, either on the English or French principle. They are اِم (im, im) my; اَنْ (ān, ān) thy; اِي (i, i), or, after a vowel, اِي (sl, sl) his, her, its; اِمْلَز (lmlz, lmlz) our, اِيْلَز (līlz, līlz) your; اِلَرِي (lèrl, lārī), their.

These possessives are suffixed to the substantives they qualify, and form one word with them. That compound word is then declined like a simple substantive; thus, اَوِيْمْ (èvlm) my house, اَوِيْمْلَنْ (èvlmln) of my house, اَوِيْمَهْ (èvlmè) to my house, اَوِيْمَدَهْ (èvlmdè) in my house; &c. (The اِي added here before the bare possessive, is thought by some to be needed in the case of a preceding consonant that does not join on in writing to its next letter in the same word. Others do not consider it necessary, and write: اَوِيْمْ, اَوِيْمْلَنْ, اَوِيْمَهْ, &c.; but

when the compound, in declension, &c., takes another vowel after it, it is more usual to add this preceding vowel also; as, *أَوَيْمِكْ* (èvlmĩñ) *of my house*, *أَوَيْمَه* (èvlmè) *to my house*; *أَوَيْكُزْ* (èvlĩnz) *your house*; &c.

The vowel that precedes the bare possessive is an èsèrè, soft or hard, given grammatically to the final consonant of the qualified substantive, when it ends in a consonant. Thus, *آت* (ât) *a horse*, *آتِم* (âtĩm) *my horse*, *آتِكَ* (âtĩñ) *thy horse*, *آتِي* (âtĩ), *his, her, its horse*, *آتِمِزْ* (âtĩmĩz) *our horse*, *آتِكِزْ* (âtĩñĩz) *your horse*, *آتِلَرِي* (âtĩlârĩ) *their horse*. After an ùtûrû vowel dominant, this èsèrè becomes ùtûrû also; thus, *أَوْغُلْ* (òghûl) *a son*, *أَوْغُلْمْ* (òghûlûm) *my son*; *بُوتْ* (bût) *a thigh*, *بُوتْمْ* (bûtûm) *or بُودْمْ* (bûddûm) *my thigh*; *يُوزْ* (yûz) *a face*, *يُوزْمْ* (yûzûm) *my face*; *كُوزْ* (gyûz) *an eye*, *كُوزْمْ* (gyûzûm) *my eye*.

When the substantive ends with a vowel, the bare possessive is added to form a syllable with that vowel, whatever it may be; thus, *بَابَامْ* (bâbâm) *my father*; *يَانَقُونْ* (yânqôn) *thy echo*; *قَابُوسِي* (qâpûsû) *his, her, its door or gate*; *سُونُكُومُزْ* (sûngyûmûz) *our bayonet*; *كُورُكُوزْ* (gyûrgyûñûz) *your experience*; *سُورُولَرِي* (sûrûlêrĩ) *their flock*. The example here given, with the possessive singular of the third person, shows clearly that when the substantive ends with a vowel, *سِي* is the possessive, in lieu of *ي* after a consonant.

If the final vowel of the substantive is *è*, it is never joined

on to the possessive in writing. Thus, تَيْزَمَ (tèyzèm) *my* (maternal) *aunt*, تَيْزَعَكْ (tèyzèh̄k) *thy aunt*, تَيْزَسِي (tèyzèsì) *his or her aunt*; تَيْزَمِلْز (tèyzèmlz) *our aunt*, تَيْزَعْنِلْز (tèyzèh̄nlz) *your aunt*, تَيْزَعَلَرِي (tèyzèlèrì) *their aunt*.

When the final vowel is *ى*, the possessives of the first and second persons singular do not join on to it in writing. In the third person singular, and in all the possessive plurals, they join on. Thus, تَرَزِي (tèrzi) *a tailor*, تَرَزِيْمَ (tèrziṁ) *my tailor*, تَرَزِيْكْ (tèrziḥ̄k) *thy tailor*, تَرَزِيْسِي (tèrziṣì) *his or her tailor*, تَرَزِيْمِلْز (tèrziṁlz) *our tailor*, تَرَزِيْكِلْز (tèrziḥ̄nlz) *your tailor*, تَرَزِيْلَرِي (tèrziḥ̄lèrì) *their tailor*. There is no valid reason for this rule; custom alone has it so. Thus are formed: كَنْدِيْمَ (kèndim) *myself*, كَنْدِيْكْ (kèndiḥ̄k) *thyself*, كَنْدِيْسِي (kèndiṣì) *his, her, itself*; كَنْدِيْمِلْز (kèndimlz) *ourselves*, كَنْدِيْكِلْز (kèndiḥ̄nlz) *yourselves*, كَنْدِيْلَرِي (kèndiḥ̄lèrì) *themselves*.

A final *ق*, in a polysyllable, as in declension, changes into *غ* before the possessives, singular or plural, excepting that of the third person plural; so also, an Arabic *ك* changes into Turkish *ك* (*y* value) in like cases. Thus, قُونَاقْ (qòṇāq), *a mansion*, قُونَاغِيْمَ (qòṇāghim) *my mansion*; اِيْپِيْكْ (ipèk) *silk*, اِيْپِيْكْ (ipèyḥ̄k) *thy silk*; طَاوُقْ (tāwùq) *a fowl*, طَاوُغِي (tāwùghì) *his or her fowl*; قُونَاغِيْمِلْز (qòṇāghimlz) *our mansion*, اِيْپِيْكِلْز (ipèyḥ̄nlz) *your silk*; طَاوُقْلَرِي (tāwùqlàrì) *their fowl*. The

reason of the exception is evident,—the final consonant takes no vowel before لَرِی.

These possessives equally qualify plural substantives, and follow the sign of the plural. Thus, اَوَّلَیْمَ (évlerim), *my houses*; اَنَلَرِکَ (âtlârîñ) *thy horses*; سُونُکُولَرِی (sûngyûlêrl) *his, her, its bayonets*; سُونُورُلَیْمِز (sûrûlêrlmiz) *our flocks*; تَیَزَہَلَرِکِز (têyzêlêrlîlz) *your aunts*; قُونَاقَلَرِی (qônâqlârî) *their mansions*.

By a consideration of the examples above given with the possessives of the third persons, singular and plural, as attached to singular and plural substantives, two peculiarities become evident, namely: 1, the plural sign is not repeated for the possessive when the substantive is itself plural; 2, consequently, the combination of a substantive and a possessive of the third person, when it has the plural syllable لَر between the two, leaves it altogether doubtful whether this plural sign belongs to the substantive or to the possessive. Even if the combination قُونَاقَلَرَلَرِی (qônâqlârlêrl) had been in use,—which is not the case,—it would have been impossible to decide whether قُونَاقَلَرِی (qônâqlârî) was intended to betoken the sense of *his* or *her mansions*, on the one hand, or *their mansion*, on the other. Add to this difficulty the third sense of *their mansions*, and the puzzle becomes still more complicated. In conversation, the doubt of the hearer may be removed, if necessary, by proper enquiries. But, in a written document,

intended to be understood by an absent reader, possibly after the death of the writer, a method was seen, especially by judges and legists, to be necessary for distinguishing between the three cases.

That distinction is effected, in writing, somewhat at the expense of plain grammar, as follows. To distinguish the single possessor of the plural possessions, the singular corroborative genitive of the personal pronoun is placed before the combination containing the plural sign ; thus, أَنْكَ قُونَاقْلَرِي (ānlārīñ qòñāqlārī) *his or her mansions*. To distinguish the plural joint possessors of a single possession, the genitive of the plural personal pronoun is prefixed, and grammar is violated by omitting the plural sign from the combination of substantive and possessive ; as, أَنْلَارِيñ قُونَاغْهِ (ānlārīñ qòñāghī) *their mansion*. In the third case, the sign of the plural is used in the corroborative and in the combination ; thus, أَنْلَارِيñ قُونَاقْلَرِي (ānlārīñ qòñāqlārī) *their mansions*. A doubt may still be felt, and these distinctions are not always used.

The declension of the combination with the possessive of the third person, singular or plural, takes a special form, a ن being introduced before the prepositions, and the final vowel-letter of the original combination suppressed before this ن, when the latter is joined in writing to the combination singular, or does not itself possess a vowel in the combination

plural. This rule, applied to possessives joined to substantives ending respectively in consonants or vowels, acts thus :

كِتَابِلَرِيْكَ , كِتَابِنْدَنْ , كِتَابِنِي , كِتَابِنْدَه , كِتَابِنَه , كِتَابِيْكَ , كِتَابِيْ  
 تِيْزَهْسِنَه , تِيْزَهْسِيْكَ , تِيْزَهْسِيْ ; كِتَابِلَرِنْدَنْ , كِتَابِلَرِيْني , كِتَابِلَرِنْدَه , كِتَابِلَرِيْنه  
 تِيْزَهْلَرِنْدَه , تِيْزَهْلَرِيْنه , تِيْزَهْلَرِيْكَ , تِيْزَهْلَرِيْ ; تِيْزَهْسِنْدَنْ , تِيْزَهْسِيْني , تِيْزَهْسِنْدَه  
 تِيْزَهْلَرِنْدَنْ , تِيْزَهْلَرِيْني .

When كَنْدِي is an adjective, it remains unchanged, and means *own* ; thus, كَنْدِي بَابَامْ (kendl bâbâm) *my own father*, كَنْدِي وَالِدَه لَرِيْكَزْ (kendl vâlidêlêrlînz) *your own mothers*, &c.

#### SECTION V. *The Demonstratives.*

These are, بُ (bù) *this*, شُو (shù) *that* or *this*, اُو (ò) or اُول (òl, as in the personal) *that*, اُولِيْرْ (òl-blr) or اُوِيْرْ (ò-blr) *the other*. They are used as substantives and as adjectives ; being declined or invariable, accordingly, like other substantives and adjectives. Thus, بُو كِتَابْ *this book*, بُو كِتَابِلَرْ *these books* ; اُوِيْرْ آدَمْ *that other man*, اُوِيْرْ آدَمِلَرْ *those other men* ; &c.

As substantives, بُ and شُو are thus declined, something like the personal اُو or اُول : بُ (bù), بُوْنُكْ (bùndñ), بُوْكَ (bùñâ), بُوْنْدَه (bùndâ), بُوْنِيْ (bùndî), بُوْنْدَنْ (bùndân) ; بُوْنَلَرْ (bùnlâr), بُوْنَلَرِيْ (bùnlârî), بُوْنَلَرِنْدَه (bùnlârdâ), بُوْنَلَرِيْني (bùnlârîni),



بُونْلَرْدَن (bunlârdân) ; شُو (shù, sometimes written شَوْل, pronounced shòl), شُونُكْ (shùnuk), شَوَكَا (shühkâ), شُونْدَه (shündâ), شُونُ (shùn), شُونْدَن (shündân) ; شُونْلَر (shunlâr), شُونْلَرِكْ (shunlârik), شُونْلَرَه (shunlârh) ; شُونْلَرْدَه (shunlârdâ), شُونْلَرِي (shunlâri), شُونْلَرْدَن (shunlârdân). With اِيچُون and اِيلَه their singulars are put in the genitive ; as, بُونُكْ اِيچُون for *this*, اِيلَه شُونُكْ with *that*.

But اُوْبِرْ, to be used as a substantive, must have the possessive suffix of the third person appended to it ; اُوْبِرِي (ò-blrl) *its other one, the other one* (of the two). It is then declined like all similar combinations : اُوْبِرِيْنِه, اُوْبِرِيْنِكْ, اُوْبِرِيْنِي, اُوْبِرِيْنَدَه, اُوْبِرِيْنَدَن, اُوْبِرِيْنِي, اُوْبِرِيْنَدَه, اُوْبِرِيْنِكْ, اُوْبِرِيْنِي, اُوْبِرِيْنَدَه, اُوْبِرِيْنَدَن. Or it may take either of the two possessive suffixes of the first and second persons plural ; as, اُوْبِرِيْمِزْ (ò-blrlmiz), *the other one of us*, اُوْبِرِيْمِزِكْ *of the other one of us* ; اُوْبِرِيْمِزَه *to the other one of you* ; اُوْبِرِيْمِزِدَه *in the other ones of us* ; اُوْبِرِيْمِزِي *the other ones of you* ; &c.

## SECTION VI. *The Interrogatives.*

كِيْمْ (kîm) *who?* is always a substantive, and declined as such, singular and plural : كِيْمِكْ *of whom? whose?* كِيْمَه *to whom?* كِيْمَدَه *in whom?* كِيْمِي *whom?* كِيْمَدَن *of or from whom?* كِيْمَلَر *who, what or which persons?* &c.

نَهْ (nè) *what* ? is generally a substantive, and declined ; but it is also used as an adjective, and is then invariable : نَهْكَ (nènlî) *of what* ? نَهْ (for نَهْه, nèyè) *to what* ? نَهْه (nèdè) *in what* ? نَهْي (nèyl) *what (accus.)* ? نَهْن (for نَهْنَن, nèdân) *from what* ? نَهْلَر (for نَهْلَرَه, nèlèr) *what (things)* ? نَهْلَرْلَه (nèlèrlî) *of what (things)* ; &c.

قَنْغِي (qāngî, vulg. hāngî) *which* ? is both substantive and adjective,—declined or invariable accordingly.

These three words, as substantives, take the possessive suffixes. Thus, كِيْمِم (klmîm) *my who* ? نَهْم (nèm) *my what* ? كِيْمْلَه (klmîlî) *thy who* ? نَهْل (nèlî) *thy what* ? قَنْغِيْسِي (qāngî-sî) *its which, which (one) of it* ? كِيْمْلَرِم (klmlèrîm) *my what persons* ? نَهْلَرِم (nèlèrîm) *my what things* ? قَنْغِيْمِز (qāngîmîz) *which (one) of us* ? قَنْغِيْلَرِيْمِز (qāngîlèrîmîz) *which (ones) of you* ? قَنْغِيْلَرِي (qāngîlèrî) *which (one, or, which ones) of them* ?

نَهْ قَدَرْ or نَقْدَرْ (vulg. nâqâdâr) <i>how much</i> ?	} are both substantives and adjectives.
نَهْ دُرْلُو (vulg. nè tûrlû) <i>what sort</i> ?	

## SECTION VII. *The Relative Pronoun.*

THERE IS NO RELATIVE PRONOUN IN TURKISH, though attempts are made to use the Persian relative and conjunction, كِه (kl), as such, in literary composition. The Turkish conjunction كِه is a very different thing. Its use by Europeans

peans and others, as a relative pronoun, is greatly to be avoided. This avoidance of all use of the relative pronoun is the prime distinction of Turkish from all Aryan and Semitic tongues. It is the perfection of language.

The numerous active and passive participles of the Turkish verb obviate the necessity of a relative. The active participles take the place of our relative when it is nominative to a verb; and the passive participles do so when our relative is the accusative, or any indirect object of a verb. (See this explained in the paragraphs on the Participles, in Section VIII., on the Verb.)

There is a peculiar Turkish relative, however, to which we have no parallel in English,—the suffix *کی* (kl). It is attached to nouns and pronouns substantive in two ways. If the substantive be in the genitive, the combination is a substantive, and indicates *that which belongs to* (the substantive); thus, *بَابَانِکِ*, *بَابَانِکْ* (bābānīkl) *the one which belongs to a (or the) father*, *بَابَامِکِ* (bābāmīkl) *the one which belongs to my father*, *بَابَاسِکِ* (bābāsīkl) *the one belonging to his (or her) father, his father's one; &c.* If the substantive be in the locative case, the combination is sometimes a substantive, sometimes an adjective. The substantive combination then indicates *that which exists in* (the simple substantive); the adjective combination expresses *the (substantive) which exists*

in (the first substantive). Thus, *بَابَامْدَهْ كِي* (bâbâmdêkl) *the thing, the one that exists, that is in* (the possession or keeping of) *my father, which my father has or holds*; *بَابَاسْنَدَهْ كِي عِلْم* (bâbâsîndêkl 'ilm) *the science possessed by his father, that is in his father*. The substantive combinations form the plural, and are declined; the adjective combination is invariable.

With a noun of place or of time the same particle, *کی*, forms a relative combination, substantive or adjective, having relation to the place or time named. In the case of the noun of place, the locative preposition may also be employed. Thus, *اَشَاغِي* *the foot, or lower part*, *اَشَاغِي كِي* and *اَشَاغِيْدَهْ كِي* *that which is at the foot*; *اَخْسَام* *the evening*, *اَخْسَام كِي* *that which was or will be (present) in the evening*.

#### SECTION VIII. *The Derivation of the Verb.*

As a general rule, each primary Turkish verb forms, itself included, a system of twelve *affirmative*, twelve *negative*, and twelve *impotential* verbs, by regular derivation;—thirty-six in all; one half being verbs *active*, the other half verbs *passive*; the active verbs being *transitive* or *intransitive*; the passives having for their nominative the direct or the indirect object of the transitive, the indirect object only of the intransitive primitive.

In another mode of subdivision, on the other hand, these

thirty-six verbs divide into two equal classes, in pairs, one of each pair being *simple*, and the other *causative* (which is also *permissive*, as the sense may show).

Each simple and causative pair of verbs is either *determinate*, *indeterminate*, or *reciprocal*; so that, by a special division of the same thirty-six, there are twelve determinate, twelve indeterminate, and twelve reciprocal verbs; thus (giving the imperatives of each, for economy of space):—

CLASSES.	ACTIVE.		
	TRANS. OR INTRANS. <i>Determinate.</i>	TRANS. OR INTRANS. <i>Indeterminate.</i>	INTRANSITIVE. <i>Reciprocal.</i>
AFFIRMATIVE	Simple { kick (him); kick.	تَبَّ (təp) kick about, dance (in pain, with joy, &c.).	تَبَّشْ (təpish) kick mutually one another.
	Causative (Permissive) { make or let (him) be kicked; ...kick.	تَبِّدِرْ (təpdir) make (him) kick about.	تَبِّشْدِرْ (təpishdir) make (them) kick mutually one another.
NEGATIVE	Simple { kick (him) not; kick not.	تَبِّنَمْ (təpnam) kick not about.	تَبِّشَمْ (təpishmam) kick not mutually one another.
	Causative (Permissive) { make or let not (him) be kicked; ...kick.	تَبِّنْدِرَمْ (təpindirmam) make not (him) kick about.	تَبِّشْدِرَمْ (təpishdirmam) make (them) not kick one another mutually.
IMPOTENTIAL	Simple { be unable to kick (him); ... to kick.	تَبِّنَمْ (təpnam) be unable to kick about.	تَبِّشَمْ (təpishmam) be unable to kick one another mutually.
	Causative (Permissive) { be unable to make (him) be kicked; ...kick.	تَبِّنْدِرَمْ (təpindirmam) be unable to make (him) kick about.	تَبِّشْدِرَمْ (təpishdirmam) be unable to make (them) kick one another mutually.



CLASSES.		PASSIVE.		
		INTRANSITIVE.		
AFFIRMATIVE	Simple	Determinate.	Indeterminate.	Reciprocal.
		تَبِلَ (təpill) be kicked, be kicked in, &c.	تَبِلَ (təplll) be kicked about in, &c.	تَبِلَ (təplshll) be mutually kicked in, &c.
	Causative (Permissive)	تَبَّرِلَ (təpdlrl) be made to be kicked.	تَبَّرِلَ (təplndrlrl) be made to be kicked about in.	تَبَّرِلَ (təplshdlrlrl) be made to kick mutually one another.
		تَبَّلَمَ (təpllmā) be not kicked.	تَبَّلَمَ (təplnlmlā) be not kicked about in.	تَبَّلَمَ (təplshlmlā) be not mutually kicked in.
NEGATIVE	Simple	تَبَّرِلَمَ (təpdlrlmā) be not made to be kicked.	تَبَّرِلَمَ (təplndrlrlmā) be not made to be kicked about in.	تَبَّرِلَمَ (təplshdlrlmlā) be not made to mutually kick one another.
	Causative (Permissive)	تَبَّلَمَ (təpllmē) be unable to be kicked.	تَبَّلَمَ (təplnlmlēmē) be unable to be kicked about in.	تَبَّلَمَ (təplshlmlēmē) be unable to be mutually kicked in.
IMPOTENTIAL	Simple	تَبَّرِلَمَ (təpdlrlmē) be unable to be made to be kicked.	تَبَّرِلَمَ (təplndrlrlmē) be unable to be made to be kicked about in.	تَبَّرِلَمَ (təplshdlrlmlēmē) be unable to be made to mutually kick one another.
	Causative (Permissive)	تَبَّلَمَ (təpllmē) be unable to be made to be kicked.	تَبَّلَمَ (təplnlmlēmē) be unable to be made to be kicked about in.	تَبَّلَمَ (təplshlmlēmē) be unable to be made to mutually kick one another.

*Remarks on the foregoing Table.*

The imperative singular is the root, or simplest form in the conjugation, primitive or derivative, of the Turkish verb. This conjugation—unique for all the thirty-six forms, as will be seen further on—consists in adding certain vowels and consonants to the end of this conjugational root.

When the conjugational root of the simple affirmative form ends in **ل**, or in a vowel, it forms its passive by adding **ن** instead of **ل**. Thus: **بُؤْل** (bül) *find*, **بُؤْلُنْ** (bülün, the *âtârû* dominating) *be found*; **قَابَلَا** (qâplâ) *cover*, **قَابَلَانْ** (qâplân) *be covered*; **أَوْقُو** (ôqû) *read*, **أَوْقُونْ** (ôqûn) *be read*. In the foregoing case of the vowel-ending, the passive sometimes takes both the **ن** and the **ل**, the **ن** always preceding; thus, **قَابَلَانِلْ** (qâplânîl, as **قَابَلَانْ**), *be covered*, **أَوْقُونُلْ** (ôqûnûl, as **أَوْقُونْ**) *be read*.

When the root of the simple affirmative has more than one syllable, and ends in **ل**, **ر**, or a vowel, its causative is formed by adding a letter **ت** in lieu of the syllable **دِر**. Thus, **قِصَالْ** (qîsâl) *become shorter*, **قِصَالْتْ** (qîsâlt) *make or let (it) become shorter*; **أَوْكُسُورْ** (ôksûr) *cough*, **أَوْكُسُورْتْ** (ôksûrt) *make or let (him) cough*; **سُؤَيْلَهْ** (sûwêylê) *speak, say*, **سُؤَيْلَتْ** (sûwêylât) *make or let (him) speak or say, make or let (it) be spoken or said (by him)*; **أَوْقُو** (ôqû) *read, recite*, **أَوْقُوتْ** (ôqût) *make or let (it) be read or recited (by him), make (him) read*.

Many simple affirmative verbs ending in consonants also form their causatives in ر, preceded by a servile èsèrè, sometimes written يَر, and even وَر, with ùtùrù; not in دِر. No rule appears to exist on this subject, and the dictionary alone, or experience, can help the student in it. Thus, اِجَّ (ich) *drink* (it), اِجِّر (ichlr) or اِجِّور (ichùr) *make or let* (it) *be drunk* (by him); بَاتَ (bât) *sink* (thou), بَاتِر (bâtîr) *make or let* (it) *sink*, *sink* (it); قَاحَ (qâch) *flee, escape*, قَاحِر (qâchîr) *make or let* (him) *flee or escape*.

When the simple verb, affirmative, negative, or impotential, is transitive, its causative governs the same accusative; and the nominative to the simple then becomes a dative to the causative. Thus, بَنَ أَنِي يَأْزِدُمْ (bèn ânî yâzdîm) *I wrote it*, سَنَ أَنِي بَكَ يَأْزِدْرِدْ (sân ânî bâñâ yâzdîrdîñ) *thou madest it to be written by me* (thou causedst to me the writing it), *thou madest or lettest me write it*.

When the simple verb is neuter, its nominative becomes the accusative of its causative; as, أَوْبُودُمْ (ùyùdùm) *I slept*, سَنَ بَنِي أَوْبُودْتُكْ (sân bènî ùyùtdùn) *thou madest or lettest me sleep*.

An indefinite series of causatives of every verb may be formed by repeating the causative suffixes, ت after دِر, and دِر after ت. They are sometimes useful, but are generally used in irony; each augment adds an agent to the chain; as, يَأْزَمَّقْ,

يَاذِرْدَرْمَقْ, يَاذِرْتَمَقْ, &c.; this last means *to cause* (a thing) *to be caused* (by a second) *to be caused* (by a third) *to be written* (by a fourth agent).

The indeterminate is also called the *Reflexive* form. It has two uses. More generally it has the same intransitive signification with the simple form, as to the action, but betokens that this action is then performed without any determinate exterior object. Thus تَبِنَمَكْ is, *to kick one's feet or heels about as one lies or stands* (like a dancer, a man in a passion, a dying animal, &c.); بَاقِنَمَقْ (bâqlumâq) is, *to look about, here and there, in a perplexed or inquisitive manner; &c.* But, at other times, this form is transitive, and then indicates that the agent is either the direct or indirect object, also, of the action,—that the act is done to or for the agent's self. Thus, قِلِجْ قُوشَانَمَقْ (qılıj qushânmağ) *to gird a sword on to one's self*; أَوَّيْدِنَمَكْ (ev edlümek) *to acquire a house for one's self*; قَاشِنَمَقْ (qâshînmağ) *to scratch one's self* (with one's nails); يِنَمَكْ (glylümek) *to put on one's clothes*, چِيَزْمَه كِيَنَمَكْ (chlzmâ glylümek) *to put on boots*, چِيَزْمَه لَرِييِي كِيَنَدِييِمْ (chlzmâlêrlîmî glylñeyîm) *let me put on my boots; &c.*

Passive verbs of neuters are *defective*; they are conjugated in the third person singular only, and in inflexions over which person and number exercise no influence. They signify, *to be such that the neutral action takes place in, to, for, by, on account*

of, &c. (as expressed), something named, as the act of some or any indeterminate agent. Thus, *بُوَيْلَهُ تَيْنَلْمَزْ* (būylê tēplnlmāz) *the act of kicking about is not thus performed*, *بُورَادَهُ تَيْنَلْمَزْ* (būrādâ tēplnlmāz) *the act of kicking about is not allowed here*; &c. We have such passive verbs in English; as, *to be slept in*, *to be fought for*; &c.

The Turkish passive verb always has, inherent in it, the sense of *to be* — *able*. Thus, *كَيْلُورْ* (kēsllr) *it is cut* (often), *it will be cut* (then), *it is cuttable* (always); *يَنْمَزْ* (yēnmāz) *it is not eaten* (as a rule), *it will not be eaten* (then), *it is not eatable* (either now, or by nature).

#### SECTION IX. *The Turkish Conjugation.*

All Turkish affirmative verbs, active or passive, transitive or intransitive, are conjugated *in one and the same invariable manner*, modified, as to their servile vowels and consonants, by the laws of class and euphony alone. The negative and impotential verbs differ from the affirmative, as to conjugation, merely in the form of the aorist active participle, and of the analogous aorist tense indicative. So that only one sole conjugation exists, in reality, in the Turkish language.

The conjugation consists of one simple and three complex categories of moods, tenses, numbers, persons, participles, verbal nouns, and gerunds; all four categories, simple and

complex, being fundamentally alike, but each modified in a certain special manner, to express a modified variation of the action.

Each category has six moods : the imperative, indicative, necessitative, optative (also subjunctive), conditional, and infinitive.

The imperative mood has one tense, the future.

The indicative has eight tenses, in four pairs ; the present and imperfect ; the aorist and past ; the perfect and pluperfect ; the future and past future.

The necessitative, optative, and conditional, have one pair each, the aorist and past. The infinitive has but one tense, the present.

Each category has five active participles ; the present (which is the general active participle, applicable, in one sense, to any time, past, present, or future), the aorist, the past, the perfect, and the future. In Turkish, the present or active, the perfect or passive, are not confused together as in European languages ; each is distinct in form and in sense, and is different from the gerund in form, as it is, in grammar and in sense, different from the verbal noun.

The active participles of the passive verbs denote the direct recipients of the action of verbs transitive ; the passive participles of the same apply to the indirect objects thereof. The active participles of the passives of intransitives denote the



indirect objects of the intransitive action ; the passive participles of such passives are not in use.

Between the five active and two passive participles of each category, a Turkish conjugation thus furnishes twenty-eight participles for every verb, primitive or derivative. By the use of these numerous participles, it entirely avoids all necessity for a relative pronoun.

The present active participle adds an *ûstûn* and the letters *اَن*, or only the letter *ن*, to the root that ends in a consonant ; the aorist adds a vowel and the letters *اَر*, or only the letter *ر*, with an *ûstûn*, *وَر* with an *ûtûrû*, and *ر* only (or sometimes *يَر*) with an *èsèrè*, for which no rule can be given ; the past adds *مِشْ* (*mîsh*, *mîsh*) to all roots, whatever their ending ; as the perfect adds *دِكْ* (*dîk*) or *دِقْ* (*dîq*). The future adds an *ûstûn* and the letters *هَجَكْ* (*èjèk*) or *هَجَقْ* (*âjâq*) to consonantal roots, and *يَدَجَكْ* or *يَدَجَقْ*, with *ûstûn*, to vowel roots, including the negatives and impotentials. Thus, *تَپَن* (*tèpân*), *قِيرَان* (*qîrân*) are present active participles ; as, *تَپِنَن* (*tèpînân*), *تَپِشَن* (*tèpl-shân*), *تَپِلَان* (*tèplân*), *تَپِنِلَان* (*tèplnllân*), and *تَپِشِلِلَان* (*tèplshlhlân*), are those of the simple affirmative derivatives. The causatives in *دِر* and in *دِرْل* add the *ûstûn* and *اَن* ; while those in *ت* change it into *د* before the letters *اَن* ; thus, *تَپْدِرَان* (*tèpdîrân*), *اَوْتُورْدَان* (*òtûrdân*), *تَپْدِرِلَان* (*tèpdîrlân*), &c. ; *تَپِمِشْ* (*tèpmîsh*) ; *تَپِدِكْ* (*tèpdîk*) ; *تَپَهَجَكْ* (*tèpèjèk*), *تَپِمَيَهَجَكْ* (*tèpmèyèjèk*), *تَپَهَمَيَهَجَكْ*

(tèpèmèyèjèk), the final *z* of the negative particle *مَهْ* being elided as useless.

When the root ends with a vowel, as is the case with all the negatives and impotentials, the syllable *يَانْ* (yân, yân) is added in the present participle, the final *z* or *ي* of the root being suppressed, and by some even the *l*; but the *و* is kept intact. Thus, *قَابِلَايَانْ* or *قَابِلَيَانْ* (qâplâyân), *تَيْمَيَانْ* (tèpmèyân), *تَيْنَمَيَانْ* (tèplnèmèyân), *يُورُيَانْ* (yûrûyân), *أَوْقُيَانْ* (ôquyân).

The Turkish present active participle, in colloquial language, as a *remanet* from eastern Turkish, takes after it the preposition *دَ* dè, dâ, to form an adverb of past or future time; as, *كَيْدَنْدَ* (gldândè) *when* (I, thou, &c.) *went, or shall go*.

The aorist active participle, of the same form as the third person singular of the aorist tense of the indicative, always ends in a letter *ز* in affirmatives, and in the syllable *مَازْ* (mâz) in negatives and impotentials. Thus, *تَيْرَ* (tèpèr), *تَيْمَازْ* (tèpmâz), *تَيْمَمَازْ* (tèpèmèz).

In the simple affirmative, the vowel added to the last consonant of the root, to which the final *ز* is then appended, cannot be defined by rule. Of course, it must be hard or soft according to the dominant in the root; but different verbs have *ûstûn*, others *èsèrè*, others again *ûtûrû*, for their vowel; and with the *ûstûn*, all hard verbs add *l*, as do some soft verbs; while other soft verbs dispense with this letter. Thus

we have: قَرَّارٌ (qîrâr), كَيْدَرٌ (gîdêr), صَانُورٌ (sânûr, *vulg.* sânr), كَوَّرٌ (gêlâr, *vulg.* gêlr), صَيَّرٌ (sîyîr).

The simple reflexive forms its aorist in اُتِّرُ and وَّرَ (generally pronounced as èsèrè and ِيرَ). The simple reciprocal does the same. We have, therefore, تَنَوَّرَ (tèpnâr, *vulg.* tèplnr), تَشَوَّرَ (tèplshâr, *vulg.* tèplshlr). All the simple and causative passives follow this rule; thus, تَپْلُرَ (tèpllâr, tèplllr), تَپْنُلُرَ (tèplnlâr, tèplnlrr), تَپْشُلُرَ (tèplshlâr, tèplshllr); تَپْدِرِلُرَ (tèpdrlâr, tèpdrlrr), تَپْنِدِرِلُرَ (tèpndrlâr, tèpndrlrr), تَپْشِدِرِلُرَ (tèplshdrlâr, tèplshdrlrr). It will be observed that a vowel ی is intercalated before the ل in these words. This is a mechanical rule. The preceding ر is a letter that does not join on to its follower; this is the sole reason for the addition of that ی, when the following ل has a vowel. The same rule is applied by many to the ر of the causative دِرَ, in like cases; that is, when it has its vowel, as it always has in the aorist. The words above given may therefore be written, تَپْدِرِلُورَ, تَپْنِدِرِلُورَ, تَپْشِدِرِلُورَ; but this has no effect on the pronunciation.

The aorist passive participle has the same form as the active perfect, and the future passive is identical in form with the future active: تَپْدِكُ (tèpdîk); تَپْجَكُ (tèpêjek).

There are three verbal nouns; the present or general, formed by adding مَ (mè, mǎ) to the root, exactly like the negative imperative; the perfect, identical in form with the

perfect active and aorist passive participles ; and the future, identical with the two future participles. Thus, تَپَمَ (tèpmè); تَپَدِکْ (tèpdik); تَپَہْجَکْ (tèpèjèk). The form تَپَمَ (tèpmè) of the present verbal noun is also that of a verbal adjective passive, signifying *done, made, effected as the result of* (the action of the verb); thus, تَپَمَ, as such adjective, means *caused by a kick or kicks*.

This derivative of the transitive verb active simple and causative can also take the passive sense; thus, کَسَمَ (kèsmè), which naturally means *an act of cutting*, often means also *an act of being cut*; as, کَسَمَی قُولَیْ (kèsmèsl qòlây) *it is easily cut*. It is also much used as a passive adjective when the verb is transitive; as, اِنْجَه کَسَمَه تُوْتُونْ (İnjè kèsmè tûtân) *finely cut tobacco*; and as an active adjective when the verb is intransitive; as, بَابَادَنْ قَالَمَه مَالْ (bâbâdân qâlmâ mâl) *property remaining from (one's) father*.

Leaving the gerunds for the present, we may now inquire into the mode of formation of the tenses of each mood. But before doing so, we must indicate the differences that serve clearly to distinguish the active participles, the passive participles, and the verbal nouns, of the two forms in دَقْ or دِکْ, and in هَجَقْ or هَجَکْ.

In the first place, the participles are adjectives, while the verbal nouns are substantives. Therefore, whenever a deriva-

tive in either of those forms qualifies a substantive, it must be a participle; it cannot be a verbal noun.

Secondly, the active participle qualifies the name of its actor only. It is therefore always a simple and invariable word, like the other active participles; as, *أَوْرَايَه كِنْدَكْ آدَمَ وَارْمِي* *is there any man who has gone there?* *أَرْتِ كِيدَه جَكْ سَنِي سِينْ* *art thou he who is to go?*

Thirdly, the passive participle always qualifies the name of the direct object, or of the indirect object, of the action, and is always accompanied by a possessive pronoun indicating the actor of that action. The first of these two facts distinguishes the passive participle from the verbal noun; the second distinguishes it from the active participle of the same form. Thus, *أَوُقُودِيْغُمْ كِتَابَ* (*òqùddùghùm kltāb*) *the book which I read* (now or formerly); *أَوُقُويَه جِيْغُمْ كِتَابَ* (*òqùyājāghīm kltāb*) *the book which I am going to read*. These are instances of the direct object qualified. So, *أَوُقُودِيْغُمْ زَمَانْ* (*òqùddùghùm zēmān*) *the time in which (i. e. when) I read*; and *كِتَابِيْ أَوُقُويَه جِيْغُمْ مَجْلِسْ* (*kltābī òqùyājāghīm mējlīs*) *the meeting in which I am going to read the book*, are instances of indirect objects; as is also *أَوُيُويَه جِيْغُمْ أَوْطَه* (*òyūyājāghīm òdā*) *the room in which I am going to sleep*.

As instances of the substantival nature of the verbal nouns, let us take, *يَاْزِيْ يَاْزِدِيْغِيْ كُوْرْدِيْكَزِمِيْ* (*yāzī yāzđlghīmī gyūrdūndz-*

mâ) *have you seen my past action of writing writing?* i. e., *have you ever seen me write?* كَلَّجَكِيمِي سَوَيْلَدِي (gâlêjêylml klm sâwêylêdl) *who mentioned my future action of coming?* i. e., *who told (you, him, &c.) that I was about to come?*

Proceed we now to discuss the formation of the tenses.

The third person singular is the root of each tense, except in the imperative. Leaving the numbers and persons for future consideration, we may say, in the first place, that, as the second tense in each pair, of every mood (excluding the imperative and the infinitive), is formed from the first tense of the pair by the addition of the auxiliary ایدی (idl) *was*, after it, we may leave these second tenses also for future consideration.

By these means we arrive at the conclusion that there are four tenses in the indicative, and one each in the necessitative, optative, conditional, and infinitive, the forms of which have to be defined.

The four indicative tenses are—the present, the aorist (present habitual and future promissive), the perfect, and the future; the single tense of the other three moods is their aorist (present or future); and that of the infinitive is its present.

The present indicative adds an *èsèrè* and the syllable يَور (yòr) to the consonantal root; thus, تَپَيُور (tèplyòr). It indi-



cates a present action (actual or habitual); *he is kicking* (now); *he now habitually kicks*. Add the auxiliary ایدی (tèplyòr ldl), and it forms the imperfect, *he was kicking* (then). A final ت more frequently changes to د; as, كَتَمَكَ (gldlyòr); اَيْدِيْوَ, اَيْتَمَكَ (èdlyòr); &c.

The aorist indicative varies in form of the servile syllable, but always ends in ر in the affirmatives, and in مَز (mèz, mǎz) in the negatives and impotentials, being identical with the active aorist participle. It indicates a present *habit* (not a present *action*), or a future *assurance*, a future *promise*, as the context or circumstances may require. Thus, تَبْرَ (tèpèr) *he kicks; he shall or will kick*; قِرَارَ (qirār) *he breaks; he shall or will break*; يُوْرُوْرَ (yûrûr) *he walks; he will walk*; اُوْقُوْرَ (òqûr) *he reads; he will read*; اِصِرِرَ (isîrîr) *he bites; he will bite*; تَبْمَزَ (tèpmǎz) *he does not kick; he will not kick*; تَبْمَمَزَ (tèpèmèz) *he cannot kick*. The auxiliary ایدی, added to this, forms the past tense (showing a past *habit*, or an unfulfilled *condition*); تَبْرَ اَيْدِيْ (tèpèr ldl) *he used to kick; he would kick* (if he could); *he would have kicked* (had he been able); in which two last senses, the expression is a virtual negative: *he kicks not*, because he is not able; *he did not kick*, because he was not able; تَبْمَزَ اَيْدِيْ (tèpmǎz ldl) *he used not to kick; he would not kick* (if he could); *he would not have kicked* (had he been able); تَبْمَمَزَ اَيْدِيْ (tèpèmèz ldl) *he used not to be able to kick; he would*

*not be able to kick* (if so and so); *he would not have been able to kick* (had not so and so); &c.

The perfect indicative is formed by adding the syllable **دِ** (dl, dî), in all cases, to the root. It is used in a determinate, and also in an indeterminate past sense, referring the action to a given past time, or to all past time. Thus, **تَدَدِ** (têpdl) *he kicked* (then); *he has kicked* (without defining when). Add the auxiliary **ايدِ**, and the pluperfect results: **تَدَدِ ايدِ** (têpdl idl), or **تَدَدِيدِ** (têpdidl), *he had kicked*; **تَدَمَدِ ايدِ** *he had not kicked*; **تَدَمَدِ ايدِ** *he had not been able to kick*.

The future indicative is identical in form with the active and passive future participles, and with the future verbal noun. It indicates that the action expressed by the conjugational root is about to take place; thus, **تَهَجَكْ** *he is about to kick, he is going to kick*; **تَهَمَجَكْ** *he is not going to kick*; **تَهَمَجَكْ** *he will not be able to kick*. Add the auxiliary **ايدِ**, and the past future results **تَهَجَكْ ايدِ** *he was going to kick*, **تَهَمَجَكْ ايدِ** *he was not going to kick*; **تَهَمَجَكْ ايدِ** *he was unable to be about to kick*. Final **ت** in the root generally changes to **د**, and a final vowel requires the addition of a consonant **يُ**: **ايدَهَجَكْ**, **يُورُوهَجَكْ**.

The aorist necessitative is formed by adding the syllables **مَلُو** (mêlî, mâlî) to the root. It indicates a present duty to perform a future act; and corresponds with our *must* or *ought*.

Thus, *تَمْلُو* *təmlu* he must kick, he ought to kick; *تَمَمْلُو* *təməmlu* he must not kick, he ought not to kick; *تَمَمْلُو* *təməmlu* he ought not to be able to kick. With the auxiliary *إِدِي* *idi*, we have the past necessitative, *تَمْلُو إِدِي* *təmlu idi* he ought to have kicked, he should have kicked; *تَمَمْلُو إِدِي* *təməmlu idi* he ought not to have kicked; *تَمَمْلُو إِدِي* *təməmlu idi* he ought not to have been able to kick.

The aorist optative is formed by adding an *ustān* and vowel *ə* to a consonantal root, or a syllable *يَ* (*yè, yâ*) to a vowel root. Sometimes *l* is used in place of *ə*. The tense is a quasi-imperative, implying optation, or it is a subjunctive. Thus, *تَهْ* (*tèpè*) let him kick, may he kick; (that) he may kick; *تَمَيَّهْ* (*tèpmèyè*, with suppression of the *ə* of the negation) let him not kick, may he not kick; (that) he may not kick; *تَمَمَيَّهْ* (*tèpèmèyè*) may he not be able to kick; (that) he may not be able to kick. Add now the auxiliary *إِدِي* *idi*, and we form the past tense, a virtual negative, expressive of regret; thus, *تَهْ إِدِي* (*tèpè ldi*, more frequently written and pronounced *تَيَّيْدِي* *tèpèydi*) had he kicked, if he had kicked; O that he had kicked; *تَمَيَّيْدِي* (*tèpmèyèydi*) had he not kicked, if he had not kicked; O that he had not kicked; *تَمَمَيَّيْدِي* (*tèpèmèyèydi*) had he not been able to kick, if he had not been able to kick; O that he had not been able to kick.

The aorist conditional is formed by adding the syllable *سَهْ* (*sè, sâ*) to any root, consonantal or vowel. This performs the

function of our conjunction *if*, in appearance; but, as أَكَّرَ (èyér), *if*, can be placed before it, it really is a subjunctive tense-ending. As a present, it admits the possibility of the action; as a future, it virtually denies the occurrence. Thus, تَپَّسَ (tèpsè) *if he kick, if he were to kick*; تَپَّسَ (tèpmèsè, the ة of negation elided) *if he kick not, were he not to kick*; تَپَّسَ (tèpmèsè) *should he not be able to kick*. Sometimes it is desiderative, *O that he kick!* &c. With اِدَّى added, we have the past conditional, which is always a virtual negative. Thus, تَپَّسَيْدَى (tèpsèydl, for تَپَّسَ اِدَّى) *had he kicked, if he had kicked*; تَپَّسَيْدَى (tèpmèsèydl) *had he not kicked*; تَپَّسَيْدَى (tèpmèsèydl) *had he not been able to kick*.

The present of the infinitive is formed by adding مَكْ (mèk) or مَقْ (mâq) to any root. Thus, تَپَّمَكْ (tèpmèk) *to kick*; قَاطَمَقْ (qâplâmâq) *to cover*. The negative and impotential are frequently written with ا, and sometimes without a vowel-letter to end the root; as, تَپَّمَمَكْ, تَپَّمَمَكْ (tèpmèmèk), for تَپَّمَمَكْ; تَپَّمَمَمَكْ, تَپَّمَمَمَكْ (tèpmèmèmèk), for تَپَّمَمَمَكْ; قَاطَلَمَمَقْ (qâplâmâmâq), قَاطَلَمَمَقْ (qâplâyââmâmâq). This tense is often rendered in English by the verbal noun in *-ing*; as, كِتْمَكْ قَالْمَقْدَنْ أَوْلَى (gltmèk qâlmâqdân èvlâ) *going is better than staying*. It also takes the suffix لَيْقُ, لَيْقُ after it to form an equivalent to our verbal noun in *-ing*; as, كِتْمَكْلَيْقُ an act of going.

There are seven *gerunds*, one *gerund-like verbal locution* of

cause, one of verbal proportion, and six to indicate various times in relation with the action. All of these gerunds and gerund-like locutions presuppose the occurrence of two actions expressed in the sentence, one by the gerund, the other by a subsequent verb. The gerunds are a kind of verbal conjunctions, while the gerund-like locutions are verbal adverbs.

The first gerund, the most frequently used, ends in an *âtârû*, followed by *وَبْ* (*ûb*, *ûb*) after a consonant, or by *يُوبْ* (*yûb*, *yûb*) after a vowel. It indicates that two actions are being mentioned, of which the one implied by the gerund is prior as to time or natural sequence. We more usually, in English, express this relation of two actions by the conjunction *and*, though we occasionally use our gerund in *-ing*, as the Turkish does. Thus, *تَبَّوبْ قِرَارْ* (*têpûb qîrâr*) *he kicks and breaks, will kick and break (it); or, kicking (it), he will break (it)*. Conversationally, this gerund is pronounced with *èsèrè* in lieu of *âtârû*; and with *p* in place of *بْ*; as, *têpîp*, *qîrîp*, &c.

The second gerund is formed by adding *âstûn*, and the letters *رَكْ* (*èrèk*) or *رَقْ* (*âràq*), to a consonantal root, *يَرَكْ* (*yèrèk*) or *يَرَقْ* (*yàràq*) to a vowel-root. It is sometimes used in lieu of the first gerund, to obviate its too frequent recurrence; but its distinctive use is to indicate that, of two contemporary sustained actions expressed, the one, subsidiary, accompanies the other. Thus, *تَبَّزَكْ كَتْدِي* *kicking, he went off*; i. e., *he*

went off, kicking away (all the time) ; كُولَرَكْ كَلْدِي he came, laughing (all the time).

The third gerund, in **نَجَه** (lnjë, lnjâ), after a consonant, or **نَجَه** (ylnjë, ylnjâ) after a vowel, and the fourth (used in writing only, and much more rarely), in **يَجَكْ** (ijêk) or **يَجَقْ** (ljâq) after a consonant, **يَجَكْ** (yijêk) or **يَجَقْ** (yijâq) after a vowel, has the sense that its action is to be a kind of signal for the occurrence of the other expressed in the sentence ; it may, then, be rendered by our *on ...* (with a gerund), also by our *as soon as ...* (with a verb). Thus, كُورُنَجَه تَدِي (gyûrânjë tēpdl) *on seeing* (him), *he kicked* (him) ; وَاِصْلْ اُولِيَجَقْ مَعْلُومْ اُولَه (vāsl̄l òlijâq, mâ'lûm òlâ) *on reaching* (as soon as it reaches), *be* (it) *known* (that.....).

The fifth gerund is identical in form with the aorist optative, repeated. It expresses repetition of one act as a means to the performance of a second. Thus, تَه تَه تَه قِيرْدِي (tèpè tèpè qirdî), *kicking*, (and) *kicking* (it), *he broke* (it).

The sixth gerund is the infinitive with **èsèrè** and **يَنْ** added ; the Persian **ك** softened into Turkish **ك** (*y* value), and the **ق** into **غ**. It expresses the verbal reason precedent for the second action. Thus, اَوْ تَمَكِينْ بَنْ قَاچِدِمْ he kicking, I fled ; i. e., *because he kicked, I fled*.

The seventh gerund expresses the beginning of a time commencing with the occurrence of an action and lasting until



now, during which another action has repeatedly or continuously occurred; it is equivalent to our *ever since* .....

In form it is the fifth gerund (not repeated) with the syllable *لُو* (lù) or *لِي* (lì) added to it. Thus, *تَهْدَلُو أَقْصَايُورْ* (tèpèlù àqsáyòr) *ever since he kicked, he has limped*.

The causal gerund-like locution is equivalent to the sixth gerund in sense. It is the infinitive, with its final consonant softened down, and with the preposition *إِلَيْهِ* (ilè, ilâ) added, and shortened into *لَ* (lè, lâ). Thus, *تَهْمَكْلَهْ* (tèpmèylè) *by kicking*. No agent of the verb is then expressed in the verb, though it be so exteriorly; as, *بَنْ تَهْمَكْلَهْ* *by my kicking, I kicking*. There is another form into which this idea is cast, and in which a perfect verbal noun, with a suffixed possessive pronoun indicative of the agent, and the ablative preposition *دَنْ* (dân) are employed. Thus, *تَهْدِيَكْمَدَنْ* (tèpdlyĩmdân) *by my (past) act of kicking*. This pronoun varies as is required: *تَهْدِيَكْلِهْدَنْ* (tèpdlyĩh̄dân) *by thy act of kicking; &c.*

The gerund-like locution of verbal, i. e., of actional proportion is formed of the perfect active participle, with the adverbial suffix of manner, *جَهْ* (jè, jâ), added to it. It defines a duration of time for two concurrent actions, the first circumscribing that duration for the continued or repeated occurrence of the other; as, *بَنْ تَهْدِيَكْجَهْ سَنْ طُوتْ* (bèn tèpdikjè, sán tùt) *while I kick, so long as I kick, do thou hold (him)*. It sometimes

expresses the rate (proportion) of rapidity of the two actions ; as, *وَقْتُ كَيْدِكَجِهْ اِيْرِ يَشُوْر* (wâqt gëchdkjê, irlëshlr) *as time goes by, it grows large* (larger).

The six verbal times indicated, in reference to an action, are the following : 1, the time before the action ; 2, the time when the action is just about to occur ; 3, the time while the action occurs ; 4, the time when it occurred ; 5, the time just when it has occurred ; 6, the time after its occurrence. The first is the present verbal noun in the ablative ; as, *تَپْمَدَنْ* (tëp-mëdën), to which, for precision's sake, the adverb *أَوَّل* (âvvâl) or *مَقْدَم* (müqâddâm), *anteriorly*, is subjoined. The expression *أَوَّل تَپْمَدَنْ* (or *تَپْمَدَنْ أَوَّل*), then, means *anteriorly to* (earlier than) *the action of kicking* ; i. e., *before kicking*. Sometimes this is vulgarly expressed as *أَوَّل تَپْمَزَنْ* *before* (the agent) *kicks not* ; i. e., *while* (as yet) *he has* (or *had*) *not kicked*.

The second gerund-like locution of time is the future active participle with the auxiliary gerund *اِيَكَنْ* (lkën), *during*, added to it ; thus, *تَپْدَجَكْ اِيَكَنْ* *during* (the time of being) *about to kick* ; i. e., *when just about to kick*.

The third is the aorist active participle with the same addition : *تَپَرِ اِيَكَنْ* *during* (the time of being) *kicking* ; i. e., *while kicking*.

The fourth is the perfect verbal noun or active participle, put in the locative (of time). It may be used impersonally,

with no addition in it ; and it may be used, for precision, with the possessive pronoun of the agent between the verbal noun and the preposition. In the former case, the verbal derivative is possibly a participle ; in the latter, it is doubtlessly the verbal noun. Thus, *بَن تَبْدَكْدَه* when I (became) one who has kicked ; or *بَن تَبْدِكِمْدَه* when I (performed) my (past) act of kicking ; i. e., when I kicked.

The fifth is the past active participle with the auxiliary *اِيَكْن* ; as, *تَبْمَش اِيَكْن* during (this time of the condition of) having kicked ; i. e., now that kicking has occurred, since (I, &c.) have kicked.

The sixth is the perfect verbal noun in the ablative (of time), followed by the adverb *سُكْرَه* (*sõnrâ, sôrâ*), after ; thus, *تَبْدِكْدَنْ سُكْرَه* (*tèpdikdân sôrâ*) after the act of kicking. The possessive pronouns may be introduced into this locution before the preposition ; as, *تَبْدِكِمْدَنْ سُكْرَه* (*tèpdylimdân sôrâ*) after my action of kicking.

#### SECTION X. *The Numbers and Persons of the Verb.*

In all the tenses the first person singular is expressed by the personal suffix *م* added to the verb, with *èséré* given to the tense-root, when this is a consonant ; and suppressing the final *ى* of the tense-root where it occurs ; adding one where wanted.

It is wanting in the imperative. Thus : تَپْيُورِم (tèplyòrîm) *I am kicking* ; تَپْيُورَايْدِم (tèplyòr-ldîm) *I was kicking* ; تَپِرِم (tèpèrîm) *I kick* ; *I shall or will kick* ; تَپِرَايْدِم (tèpèr-ldîm) *I used to kick* ; *I would kick* ; *I would have kicked* ; تَپْدِم (tèpdîm) *I kicked* ; *I did kick* ; *I have kicked* ; تَپْدِيدِم (tèpdîdîm) or تَپْدِمَايْدِي (tèpdîm-ldî) *I had kicked* ; تَپْجَايْم (tèpèjëyîm) *I am going to kick* ; تَپْجَايْدِم (tèpèjëkdîm) *I was going to kick* ; تَپْمَلُيْم (tèpmèllyîm) *I must kick* ; تَپْمَلُوَايْدِم (tèpmèlî-ldîm) *I should have kicked, ought to have kicked* ; تَپَم (tèpèm) *that I may kick* ; تَپِيدِم (tèpèydîm) *that I had kicked* ; تَپْسَم (tèpsèm) *if I kick* ; تَپْسِيدِم (tèpsèydîm) *if I had kicked*.

The second person singular, in all the tenses in دِي, is formed by changing the vowel ي into the nasal Turkish ك; as, تَپْيُورَايْدِيك (tèplyòr-ldîñ), تَپِرَايْدِيك (tèpèr-ldîñ), تَپْدِيك (tèpdîñ), تَپْجَايْدِيك (tèpèjëkdîñ), تَپْمَلُوَايْدِيك (tèpmèlî-ldîñ), تَپِيدِيك (tèpèydîñ), تَپْسِيدِيك (tèpsèydîñ). All the other tenses form it in سِي (sîñ), sometimes written and pronounced سِيك (sîñ), excepting the present of the conditional, which forms it with سَاك (sâñ, sâñ); sometimes written سَاك, but pronounced like سَاك. Thus, تَپْيُورُسِي (tèplyòrsî), تَپِرُسِي (tèpèrsî), تَپْجَاكُسِي (tèpèjëksî); تَپْمَلُوسِي (tèpmèlîsî), تَپْهَسِي (tèpèsî).

The first person plural, likewise, in all the tenses in دِي, is

formed by changing the vowel **ى** into Arabic **ك** (*k* value); excepting that of the perfect, which, in hard words, always forms this person in **ق** instead of **ك**. Thus, **تَبَيَّرَ اِيْدِكْ** (tèplyòr-ldlk), **تَبَّرَ اِيْدِكْ** (tèpèr-ldlk), **تَبَّدِكْ** (tèpdlk), **تَبَّدِيْدِكْ** (tèpdīdlk, or **تَبَّجَكِيْدِكْ** tèpdlk-ldl), **تَبَّجَكْ اِيْدِكْ** (tèpèjèk-ldlk, or **تَبَّجَكِيْدِكْ** tèpèjèyldlk, or **تَبَّجَكْدِكْ** tèpèjèkdlk), **تَبَّمَلُو اِيْدِكْ** (tèpmèll-ldlk), **تَبَّيْدِكْ** (tèpèydlk), **تَبَّسَيْدِكْ** (tèpsèydlk). With a hard word like **بَاقَمَقْ** (bâqmâq), the perfect forms **بَاقَدِقْ** (bâqdīq). If this person in the past future indicative, in the past optative, and in the past conditional, is used in the contracted form, these also, with hard words, use **ق** instead of **ك**; as, **بَاقَجَعْدِقْ** (bâqâjagh-dīq), **بَاقَيْدِقْ** (bâqâydlīq), **بَاقَسَيْدِقْ** (bâqsâydlīq). In the imperative and present optative, it is formed by adding **اُستُنْ** and **هَلَمْ** to the consonantal root, the syllable **لَمْ** having èsèrè for its vowel; or, in vowel-roots, by adding the two syllables **يَلَمْ** (yèllm, yâllm); thus, **تَبَّهَلَمْ** (tèpèllm), **بَاقَهَلَمْ** (bâqâllm), **سُوَيْلَيْهَلَمْ** (sûwèy-lèyèllm), **اَوْقُوْبَالَمْ** (òqûyâllm, for **اَوْقُوْبَهَلَمْ**). In hard words, the present of the conditional forms this person with **ق** also; as, **بَاقَسَدَقْ** (bâqsâq, sometimes written **بَاقَسَقْ**), **اَوْقُسَدَقْ** (òqûsâq, **اَوْقُسَقْ**). The present, aorist, and future indicative, with the present necessitative, form it in **ز** or **يز**, with èsèrè added to the final consonant of the tense-root of the indicatives, and with that vowel given to the **ى** of **يز** in the necessitative;

thus, تَيُورِزْ (tèplyòrız), تَپَرِزْ (tèpèrız), تَهَجَكِرِزْ (tèpèjèyırız, the Arabic ك changed into Turkish ك, *y* value), تَپْمُولِزْ (tèpmèllyız). In hard words, the future indicative is in غ (softened ق), with èsèrè before the final ز; as, بَاقَهَجَغِزْ (bâqâjâghız).

The second person plural, again, in all the tenses in دِي, is formed in دِيَكِرْ (dlînz; which is hard in the perfect of hard words, dlînz). Thus, تَيُورْدِيَكِرْ (tèplyòrdlînz), تَپَرْدِيَكِرْ (tèpèrdlînz), تَپْدِيَكِرْ (tèpdlînz), بَاقْدِيَكِرْ (bâqdlînz), تَپْدِيدِيَكِرْ (tèpdîdlînz), تَهَجَكْدِيَكِرْ (tèpèjèydlînz), تَپْمُولْايدِيَكِرْ (tèpmèll-ldlînz), تَپْئِيدِيَكِرْ (tèpèydlînz), تَپْسِيدِيَكِرْ (tèpsèydlînz). The imperative has two forms, in كْ and in كِرْ, both preceded by èsèrè, and a consonant ی in vowel-roots; as, تَپْ (tèplî), تَپِكِرْ (tèplînz, written also تَپِيَكِرْ); يَاقْ (bâqlî), بَاقِكِرْ (bâqlînz); قَاقْلَايْ (qâplâyî), اَوُقُيُكِرْ (òquyûnîz; the útârû dominating). All the other tenses form it in سِيَكِرْ (slînz, slînz), except the present conditional, which has ûstân for its first vowel, often written سَهَكِرْ (sâînz, sâînz, to distinguish it better). Thus, تَيُورْسِيَكِرْ (tèplyòrslînz), تَپَرْسِيَكِرْ (tèpèrslînz), تَهَجَكْسِيَكِرْ (tèpèjèkslînz; hard in hard words, بَاقَهَجَقْسِيَكِرْ bâqâjâqslînz), تَپْمُولْسِيَكِرْ (tèpmèllslînz), تَهَسِيَكِرْ (tèpèslînz; hard in hard words, بَاقَهَسِيَكِرْ bâqâslînz), تَپْسَهَكِرْ (tèpsèînz; hard in hard words, بَاقَهَسَهَكِرْ bâqsâînz).

The third person plural is formed from the same person of



the singular, with the syllable لَر (lér, lâr) added. Thus, تَسُونَلَر (tèpsnlér); تَيُورَلَر (tèplyòrlâr), تَيَرَلَر (tèpèrlér), تَيَدِلَر (tèpdllér), تَيَجَكَلَر (tèpèjèklér), تَيَمَلَلَر (tèpmèllér), تَيَئَلَر (tèpèlér), تَيَسَلَلَر (tèpsèlér). The tenses in اِيْدِي may be formed in this way, اِيْدِي becoming اِيْدِلَر (ldllér); or, the plural sign may be given to the radical element, and اِيْدِي be kept unchanged; as, تَيُورَلَر اِيْدِي or تَيُور اِيْدِلَر; and so throughout, except the past optative, which prefers دِيَلَر.

#### SECTION XI. *Of the Complex Categories.*

The Complex Categories of every Turkish verb, active or passive, transitive or intransitive, affirmative, negative, or impotential, are formed, even as to their roots, with an auxiliary verb, اَوْلَمَقْ (òlmâq) *to be or become*; itself conjugated, as a simple verb, in conformity with what has already been laid down, and joined to the aorist, past, and future active participles of the verb of which the complex category is to be formed. The auxiliary follows the participle.

With the aorist participle, the auxiliary verb اَوْلَمَقْ forms the First Complex Category; with the past participle, it forms the Second Complex Category; and with the future participle, it forms the Third Complex Category.

It would be possible to avoid using these terms, and to fuse

the whole into one vast conjugation, by following the method used by European grammarians, each for the European language in which he treats of the subject. In some respects, such an arrangement would possess an advantage. It would bring together tenses of the one verb, which are but delicate modifications of each other. The disadvantage would be, on the whole, preponderant ; for the one vast conjugation of simple and complex tenses formed with continually intermingling, varying participles, would be very puzzling to the novice, would choke out of view the principles of the subdivision, and prevent a lucid exposition thereof, besides demanding the invention of a host of new names by which to distinguish the numerous tenses so brought together ; whereas, by keeping the same names for the same tenses of the four categories, it would seem that a truer perception of the shade of meaning which distinguishes each of the four tenses of each name will be more easily attained and more firmly grasped. Still, as a comparison with other systems offers a certain amount of utility, we have given below the three complex categories apart, to show their principles, and have then arranged the whole four categories as a single conjugation.

## SECTION XII. *The First Complex Category.*

This is formed with the aorist active participle, of every

class of verb, active or passive, transitive or intransitive, primary or derivative, affirmative or negative. In form, it is simply the conjugation of the auxiliary verb **أَوْلَمَقَّ** (*òlmâq*) to *be*, the participle, as an adjective, remaining invariable throughout. We give one person only in each tense.

*Infinitive.*

**تَبَّرْ أَوْلَمَقَّ** (*tèpèr òlmâq*) To be a willing, natural, determined, constant, or habitual kicker; to be kicking; to kick (habitually).

*Imperative.*

**تَبَّرْ أَوْلْ** (*tèpèr òl*) Be thou kicking; kick thou (habitually).

*Indicative.*

## Present.

**تَبَّرْ أَوْلِيوْرِمَ** (*tèpèr òllyòrîm*) I am continually kicking.

## Imperfect.

**تَبَّرْ أَوْلِيوْرَ إِيدِمَ** (*tèpèr òllyòr îdîm*) I was continually kicking.

## Aorist.

**تَبَّرْ أَوْلُوْرُمَ** (*tèpèr òlûrûm*) I am continually kicking; I shall be ever kicking.

## Past.

**تَبَّرْ أَوْلُوْرَ إِيدِمَ** (*tèpèr òlûr îdîm*) I used to be always kicking; I would be, or would have been, always kicking.

## Perfect.

تَپَرَّأُولُدُمْ (tèpèr òldüm) I became a constant kicker.

## Pluperfect.

تَپَرَّأُولُدُمْ إِيْدِي (tèpèr òldüm idl) I had been or become a constant kicker.

## Future.

تَپَرَّأُولَجَعُمْ (tèpèr òlâjâghım) I am about to become a constant kicker.

## Future Past.

تَپَرَّأُولَجَعْدُمْ (tèpèr òlâjâghdım) I was about to become a constant kicker.

*Necessitative.*

## Aorist.

تَپَرَّأُولْمَلُؤِيْمُ (tèpèr òlmâllyım) I must be, or become, a constant kicker.

## Past.

تَپَرَّأُولْمَلُؤِيْدِيْمُ (tèpèr òlmâllyıdım) I ought to have been a constant kicker.

*Optative.*

## Aorist.

تَپَرَّأُولَیْمُ (tèpèr òlâyım) That I may be a constant kicker.

## Past.

تَپَرَّأُولَیْدِيْمُ (tèpèr òlâyıdım) That I had been a constant kicker.

*Conditional.**Aorist.*

تَپَرَّأُولَسَّامَ (tèpèr òlsām)      Were I, should I become, a  
constant kicker.

*Past.*

تَپَرَّأُولَسَّيْدِمَ (tèpèr òlsâydlm)      Had I been a constant kicker.

*Active Participles.**Present.*

تَپَرَّأُولَانِ (tèpèr òlān)      Who or which is, was, will be,  
a constant kicker.

*Aorist.*

تَپَرَّأُولُرْ (tèpèr òlūr)      (*perhaps unused, as a cacophony.*)

*Past.*

تَپَرَّأُولَمُشْ (tèpèr òlmùsh)      Who has been a constant  
kicker.

*Perfect.*

تَپَرَّأُولْدُقْ (tèpèr òldùq)      Who was a constant kicker.

*Future.*

تَپَرَّأُولَهَجَقْ (tèpèr òlājāq)      Who is to be a constant kicker.

*Passive Participles.**Aorist.*

تَپَرَّأُولْدُقْ (tèpèr òldùq)      Who or which (a kicker) has  
constantly kicked.

## Future.

تَبْرَأُولَجَقْ (tèpèr òlâjâq)

Who, which (I, &c.) am about  
constantly to kick.*Verbal Nouns.*

## Present.

تَبْرَأُولَمَّ (tèpèr òlmâ)

The act of being (at any time)  
a constant kicker.

## Perfect.

تَبْرَأُولُدُقْ (tèpèr òldûq)

The act of having been (then)  
a constant kicker.

## Future.

تَبْرَأُولَجَقْ (tèpèr òlâjâq)

The act of being about (now)  
to become (hereafter) a con-  
stant kicker.*Gerunds.*

1st. تَبْرَأُولُوبْ (tèpèr òlûp)

Being a constant kicker  
(and .....).

2nd. تَبْرَأُولَرَقْ (tèpèr òlârâq)

Continuing to be a con-  
stant kicker (*so and so*  
*also occurs*).

3rd. تَبْرَأُولُنَجْ (tèpèr òlûnjâ)

4th. تَبْرَأُولِيَقْ (tèpèr òlîjâq)

} As soon as — becomes  
(became, will become) a  
constant kicker, .....



- 5th. تَبَّرَ أَوَّلَهُ أَوَّلَهُ (tèpèr òlâ òlâ) By continually being a constant kicker, .....
- 6th. تَبَّرَ أَوَّلَمَغِينْ (tèpèr òlmâghîn) By reason of being a constant kicker, .....
- 7th. تَبَّرَ أَوَّلِي (tèpèr òlâlî) Ever since — became (has been) a constant kicker, .....

SECTION XIII. *The Second Complex Category.**Infinitive.*

## Present.

تَبَّيْمَشْ أَوْلَمَقْ (tèpmlsh òlmâq) To have kicked.

*Imperative.*

## Future.

تَبَّيْمَشْ أَوْلْ (tèpmlsh òl) Be thou one who has kicked ; have kicked.

*Indicative.*

## Present.

تَبَّيْمَشْ أَوْلِيُورِمْ (tèpmlsh òllyórim) I am, or am becoming, one who has kicked ; I have kicked.

## Imperfect.

تَبَّيْمَشْ أَوْلِيُورِدِمْ (tèpmlsh òllyórdîm) I was, or was becoming, one who has kicked.

## Aorist.

تَبَّيْمَشْ أَوْلُرُمْ (tèpmlsh òlûrûm) I shall have kicked.

## Past.

تَبِمِشْ أُولُورْدُمْ (têpmîsh òlûrdûm) I should have kicked.

## Perfect.

تَبِمِشْ أُولْدُمْ (têpmîsh òldûm) I became one who had kicked, I had kicked.

## Pluperfect.

تَبِمِشْ أُولْدُمْ اِيدِي (têpmîsh òldûm îdî) I had become one who has kicked.

## Future.

تَبِمِشْ أُولَجَعِمْ (têpmîsh òlâjâghîm) I am about becoming one who has kicked; I am going to have kicked.

## Future Past.

تَبِمِشْ أُولَجَقْ اِيدِي (têpmîsh òlâjâq îdîm) I was about to have kicked.

## Necessitative.

## Aorist.

تَبِمِشْ أُولْمَلُويْمْ (têpmîsh òlmâlîyîm) I must (now) have kicked (then).

## Past.

تَبِمِشْ أُولْمَلُويْدِيْمْ (têpmîsh òlmâlîyîdîm) I must (then) have (already) kicked (before).

## Optative.

## Aorist.

تَبِمِشْ أُولَيِّمْ (têpmîsh òlâyîm, That I may have kicked.  
أُولَمْ òlâm)

## Past.

تَپْمِشْ اُولَیْدِمْ (təpmiş öläydım)      That I had kicked.

*Conditional.*

## Aorist.

تَپْمِشْ اُولَسَمْ (təpmiş ölsəm, اولسم)      Had I kicked (then).

## Past.

تَپْمِشْ اُولَسَیْدِمْ (təpmiş ölsäydım)      Had I (already) kicked  
(before then).

*Active Participles.*

## Present.

تَپْمِشْ اُولَانْ (təpmiş öläñ)      Who has (already) kicked.

## Aorist.

تَپْمِشْ اُولُرْ (təpmiş öläür)      Who will have (already)  
kicked.

*Past and Perfect, perhaps not used.*

## Future.

تَپْمِشْ اُولَاجَقْ (təpmiş öläjâq)      Who will become one who  
has kicked.

*Passive Participles.*

## Aorist.

تَپْمِشْ اُولْدُقْ (təpmiş öldüq)      Which (a kicker) had  
(already) kicked.

## Future.

تَيَمِّشْ أُولَهْجَقْ (tèpmish òlâjâq)	Which (a kicker) will have kicked.
--	------------------------------------

*Verbal Nouns.*

## Present.

تَيَمِّشْ أُولَمَهْ (tèpmish òlmâ)	The (present state of) having (already) kicked.
------------------------------------	---

## Perfect.

تَيَمِّشْ أُولْدُقْ (tèpmish òldûq)	The (past state of) having (previously) kicked.
-------------------------------------	---

## Future.

تَيَمِّشْ أُولَهْجَقْ (tèpmish òlâjâq)	The (future state of) having (previously) kicked.
--	---

*Gerunds.*

1st. تَيَمِّشْ أُولُوبْ (tèpmish òlûp)	Having kicked (and....).
2nd. أُولَرَقْ ... ( ... òlârâq)	Having the continued quality of having kicked (and ...).
3rd. أُولْنَجَهْ ... ( ... òlûnjâ)	As soon as (— is, was, will be) one who or which had kicked, ...
4th. أُولِيَقْ ... ( ... òlijâq)	The instant ( — ) had kicked, ....

- 5th. تَمَّشْ أَوْلَهْ أَوْلَهْ (tèpmish òlâ òlâ) By continuing to have kicked, ....
- 6th. أَوْلَغِينْ ... ( ... òlmâghîn) By reason of having kicked, ....
- 7th. أَوْلَلِيْ ... ( ... òlâlî) Since — became one who had kicked, ....

SECTION XIV. *The Third Complex Category.**Infinitive.**Present.*

- تَبْدَجَكْ أَوْلَقْ (tèpèjèk òlmâq) To be about to kick (ready to kick).

*Imperative.**Future.*

- تَبْدَجَكْ أَوْلْ (tèpèjèk òl) Be thou about to kick.

*Indicative.**Present.*

- تَبْدَجَكْ أَوْلِيْوَرِمْ (tèpèjèk òllyòrîm) I am (often) on the point of kicking; I become on the point ....

*Imperfect.*

- تَبْدَجَكْ أَوْلِيْوَرِإِدِمْ (tèpèjèk òllyòr îdlîm) I was (often) on the point ....

*Aorist.*

- تَبْدَجَكْ أَوْلُرُمْ (tèpèjèk òlûrûm) I am (habitually), I shall be (then) on the point ...

## Past.

تَهَجَّكْ أُولُرْدُمْ (tèpèjèk òlùrdùm) I used (habitually); I  
should be (then) on  
the point ....

## Perfect.

تَهَجَّكْ أُولْدُمْ (tèpèjèk òldùm) I was (then) on the  
point ....

## Pluperfect.

تَهَجَّكْ أُولْدُمْ إِيْدِي (tèpèjèk òldùm idl) I had been (before  
then) on the point ....

## Future and Future Past.

تَهَجَّكْ أُولَهَجِّم (tèpèjèk òlàjaghîm) }  
تَهَجَّكْ أُولَهَجِّدُمْ (tèpèjèk òlàjaghîdîm) } *Not used, as being caco-*  
*phonies.*

## Necessitative.

## Aorist.

تَهَجَّكْ أُولَمَلِّوِيْم (tèpèjèk òlmâlîyîm) I must be on the  
point ....

## Past.

تَهَجَّكْ أُولَمَلِّوِيْدِيْم (tèpèjèk òlmâlîyîdîm) I ought to have been  
on the point ....

## Optative.

## Aorist.

تَهَجَّكْ أُولَم (tèpèjèk òlâm) That I may be on the  
point ....



## Past.

تَهَجَّكْ أُولَيْدِم (tèpèjèk òláyđīm) That I had been on the point ....

*Conditional.*

## Aorist.

تَهَجَّكْ أُولْسَام (tèpèjèk òlsām) Were I to be or become on the point ....

## Past.

تَهَجَّكْ أُولْسَيْدِم (tèpèjèk òlsáyđīm) Had I been on the point ....

*Active Participles.*

## Present.

تَهَجَّكْ أُولَان (tèpèjèk òlān) Who or which is or becomes on the point ....

## Aorist.

تَهَجَّكْ أُولُور (tèpèjèk òlūr) Who or which is (naturally) or will be (some time) on the point ....

## Past and Perfect.

تَهَجَّكْ أُولْمُش (tèpèjèk òlmush) } Who or which has been or  
تَهَجَّكْ أُولْدُق (tèpèjèk òlduq) } was (then) on the point....

## Future.

تَهَجَّكْ أُولْجَق (tèpèjèk òlājāq) Not used, as being cacophonous.

*Passive Participles.**Aorist.*

تَبَدَّجَكَ أُولْدُقْ (tèpèjèk òlduq) Which (a kicker) was on the point ....

*Future.*

*Cacophonous ; not used.*

*Verbal Nouns.**Present.*

تَبَدَّجَكَ أُولْمَهْ (tèpèjèk òlmâ) The act of being *or* becoming (at any time) on the point....

*Perfect.*

تَبَدَّجَكَ أُولْدُقْ (tèpèjèk òlduq) The past act *or* state of being (then) on the point ....

*Future.*

*Cacophonous ; not used.*

*Gerunds.*

- |      |                                     |   |
|------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1st. | تَبَدَّجَكَ أُولُوبْ (tèpèjèk òlûp) | Being about to kick<br>(and ....)                           |
| 2nd. | أُولَرْقْ ... ( ... òlârâq)         | Continuing to be about<br>to kick (and ....)                |
| 3rd. | أُولُجَّهْ ... ( ... òlûnjâ)        | As soon as ( — is, was,<br>will be) about to kick,<br>..... |
| 4th. | أُولَيِّحَى ...                     | <i>Cacophonous.</i>   |

- 5th.  $\text{تَهَجَكْ اُولَهْ اُولَهْ}$  (tépèjèk òlà òlà) By continuing to be about to kick, ....
- 6th.  $\text{اُولَمَغِينْ}$  ... ( ... òlmaghìn) By reason of being about ....
- 7th.  $\text{اُولَهْلِيْ}$  ... ( ... òlàlî) Ever since — became on the point ....

SECTION XV. *The Combined (true Turkish) Conjugation.**Infinitive.*

Present.  $\text{تَهَمَكْ}$   $\text{تَهَرَّ اُولَمَقْ}$   $\text{تَهَمِشْ اُولَمَقْ}$   $\text{تَهَهَجَكْ اُولَمَقْ}$

*Imperative.*

Future.  $\text{تَهْ}$   $\text{تَهَرَّ اُولْ}$   $\text{تَهَمِشْ اُولْ}$   $\text{تَهَهَجَكْ اُولْ}$

*Indicative.*

Present.  $\text{تَهِيُورْ}$   $\text{تَهَرَّ اُولِيُورْ}$   $\text{تَهَمِشْ اُولِيُورْ}$   $\text{تَهَهَجَكْ اُولِيُورْ}$

Imperf.  $\text{تَهِيُورْدِيْ}$   $\text{... اُولِيُورْدِيْ}$   $\text{... اُولِيُورْدِيْ}$   $\text{... اُولِيُورْدِيْ}$

Aorist.  $\text{تَهَرْ}$   $\text{... اُولُورْ}$   $\text{... اُولُورْ}$   $\text{... اُولُورْ}$

Past.  $\text{تَهَرْدِيْ}$   $\text{... اُولُورْدِيْ}$   $\text{... اُولُورْدِيْ}$   $\text{... اُولُورْدِيْ}$

Perfect.  $\text{تَهْدِيْ}$   $\text{... اُولْدِيْ}$   $\text{... اُولْدِيْ}$   $\text{... اُولْدِيْ}$

Pluperf.  $\text{تَهْدِيْدِيْ}$   $\text{... اُولْدِيْدِيْ}$   $\text{... اُولْدِيْدِيْ}$   $\text{... اُولْدِيْدِيْ}$

Future.  $\text{تَهَجَكْ}$   $\text{... اُولَهَجَقْ}$   $\text{... اُولَهَجَقْ}$  (not used)

Fut. Past.  $\text{تَهَجَكْدِيْ}$   $\text{... اُولَهَجَقْدِيْ}$   $\text{... اُولَهَجَقْدِيْ}$  (not used)

*Necessitative.*

Aorist.	تَمَلَو	تَرَّأَمَلَو	تَمِشْ أَمَلَو	تَهَجَكْ أَمَلَو
Past.	تَمَلَوَايْدِي	أَمَلَوَايْدِي ...	أَمَلَوَايْدِي ...	أَمَلَوَايْدِي ...

*Optative.*

Aorist.	تَه	تَرَّأَوَه	تَمِشْ أَوَه	تَهَجَكْ أَوَه
Past.	تَهَيْدِي	أَوَلَيْدِي ...	أَوَلَيْدِي ...	أَوَلَيْدِي ...

*Conditional.*

Aorist.	تَسَه	تَرَّأَوَسَه	تَمِشْ أَوَسَه	تَهَجَكْ أَوَسَه
Past.	تَسَيْدِي	أَوَلَسَيْدِي ...	أَوَلَسَيْدِي ...	أَوَلَسَيْدِي ...

*Active Participles.*

Present.	تَپَن (تَپَان)	تَرَّأَوَان	تَمِشْ أَوَان	تَهَجَكْ أَوَان
Aorist.	تَپَر	أَوُور ...	أَوُور ...	أَوُور ...
Past.	تَمِشْ	أَوَمَشْ ...	(not used)	أَوَمَشْ ...
Perfect.	تَپَدِكْ	أَوَلْدُق ...	أَوَلْدُق ...	أَوَلْدُق ...
Future.	تَهَجَكْ	أَوَلَهَجَقْ ...	أَوَلَهَجَقْ ...	(not used)

*Passive Participles.*

Aorist.	تَپَدِكْ	تَرَّأَوَلْدُق	تَمِشْ أَوَلْدُق	تَهَجَكْ أَوَلْدُق
Future.	تَهَجَكْ	أَوَلَهَجَقْ ...	أَوَلَهَجَقْ ...	(not used)

*Verbal Nouns.*

Present.	تَبَّعَهُ	تَبَّرَ أَوْلَاهُ	تَبَّعَ أَوْلَاهُ	تَبَّعَكَ أَوْلَاهُ
Perfect.	تَبَّدَكَ	... أَوْلَدَكَ	... أَوْلَدَكَ	... أَوْلَدَكَ
Future.	تَبْدُجَكَ	... أَوْلَدُجَكَ	... أَوْلَدُجَكَ	(not used.)

...

*...Gerunds.*

1st.	تَبُّوبٌ	تَبَّرَ أَوْلُوبٌ	تَبَّعَ أَوْلُوبٌ	تَبَّعَكَ أَوْلُوبٌ
2nd.	تَبْدَرَكٌ	... أَوْلَدَرَقٌ	... أَوْلَدَرَقٌ	... أَوْلَدَرَقٌ
3rd.	تَبْنَجَه	... أَوْلَنَجَه	... أَوْلَنَجَه	... أَوْلَنَجَه
4th.	تَبِيحَكُ	... أَوْلِيحَقُ	... أَوْلِيحَقُ	... أَوْلِيحَقُ
5th.	تَبَّهَ تَبَّه	... أَوْلَهَ أَوْلَه	... أَوْلَهَ أَوْلَه	... أَوْلَهَ أَوْلَه
6th.	تَبْمَكِينٌ	... أَوْلَمَغِينٌ	... أَوْلَمَغِينٌ	... أَوْلَمَغِينٌ
7th.	... تَبْدَلُو	... أَوْلَدَلُو	... أَوْلَدَلُو	... أَوْلَدَلُو

SECTION XVI *The Negative and Impotential Conjugations.*

The Negative and Impotential Conjugations, twenty-four in number to each simple verb, as a general rule, are formed precisely on the lines of the simple affirmative conjugation in its four categories, as above given, with the exception of the aorist of the indicative, as to its root-word of the third person

singular, and the corresponding aorist active participle, which end in مَز (māz), instead of the final ر of the affirmative.

*Infinitive.*

...

*Present.*

تَپَمَکْ	تَپَزْ اُولُقْ	تَپَامِشْ اُولُقْ	تَپَمَکْ اُولُقْ
تَپَمَامْکْ	تَپَمَزْ ...	تَپَمَامِشْ ...	تَپَمَمَکْ اُولُقْ ...

*Imperative.*

*Future.*

...

تَپَمَکْ	تَپَزْ اُولُ	تَپَامِشْ اُولُ	تَپَمَکْ اُولُ
تَپَمَمَکْ	تَپَمَزْ ...	تَپَمَامِشْ ...	تَپَمَمَکْ اُولُ ...

...

*Indicative.*

...

*Present.*

تَپَمِیُورْ	تَپَزْ اُولِیُورْ	تَپَامِشْ اُولِیُورْ	تَپَمَکْ اُولِیُورْ
تَپَمِیُورْ	تَپَمَزْ ...	تَپَمَامِشْ ...	تَپَمَمَکْ اُولِیُورْ ...

*Imperfect.*

تَپَمِیُورْدِیْ	تَپَزْ اُولِیُورْدِیْ	تَپَامِشْ اُولِیُورْدِیْ	تَپَمَکْ اُولِیُورْدِیْ
تَپَمِیُورْدِیْ	تَپَمَزْ ...	تَپَمَامِشْ ...	تَپَمَمَکْ اُولِیُورْدِیْ ...

*Aorist.*

تَپَمَزْ	تَپَزْ اُولُورْ	تَپَامِشْ اُولُورْ	تَپَمَکْ اُولُورْ
تَپَمَزْ	تَپَمَزْ ...	تَپَمَامِشْ ...	تَپَمَمَکْ اُولُورْ ...



## Past.

تَمَّيَّ جَكَ اُولُورْدَى	تَمَّيَّ اُولُورْدَى	تَمَّيَّ اُولُورْدَى	تَمَّيَّ جَكَ اُولُورْدَى
تَمَّيَّ جَكَ ...	تَمَّيَّ مَاشْ ...	تَمَّيَّ مَاشْ ...	تَمَّيَّ جَكَ ...

## Perfect.

تَمَّيَّ جَكَ اُولْدَى	تَمَّيَّ اُولْدَى	تَمَّيَّ اُولْدَى	تَمَّيَّ جَكَ اُولْدَى
تَمَّيَّ جَكَ ...	تَمَّيَّ مَاشْ ...	تَمَّيَّ مَاشْ ...	تَمَّيَّ جَكَ ...

## Pluperfect.

تَمَّيَّ جَكَ اُولْدِيدَى	تَمَّيَّ اُولْدِيدَى	تَمَّيَّ اُولْدِيدَى	تَمَّيَّ جَكَ اُولْدِيدَى
تَمَّيَّ جَكَ ...	تَمَّيَّ مَاشْ ...	تَمَّيَّ مَاشْ ...	تَمَّيَّ جَكَ ...

## Future.

تَمَّيَّ جَكَ	تَمَّيَّ اُولَهَجَقَى	تَمَّيَّ اُولَهَجَقَى	(not used)
تَمَّيَّ جَكَ ...	تَمَّيَّ مَاشْ ...	تَمَّيَّ مَاشْ ...	(not used)

## Future Past.

تَمَّيَّ جَكَدَى	تَمَّيَّ اُولَهَجَقَدَى	تَمَّيَّ اُولَهَجَقَدَى	(not used)
تَمَّيَّ جَكَدَى	تَمَّيَّ مَاشْ ...	تَمَّيَّ مَاشْ ...	(not used)

## Necessitative.

## Aorist.

تَمَّيَّ اُولَمَلُو	تَمَّيَّ اُولَمَلُو	تَمَّيَّ اُولَمَلُو	تَمَّيَّ جَكَ اُولَمَلُو
تَمَّيَّ اُولَمَلُو	تَمَّيَّ مَاشْ ...	تَمَّيَّ مَاشْ ...	تَمَّيَّ جَكَ ...

## Past.

تَمَّيْجَكْ اُولَمْلُو اِيْدِي	تَمَّامِشْ اُولَمْلُو اِيْدِي	تَمَزْ اُولَمْلُو اِيْدِي	تَمَّامْلُو اِيْدِي
تَهْمِيَهْ جَكْ ...	تَهْمَامِشْ ...	تَهْمَزْ ...	تَهْمَامْلُو اِيْدِي

## Optative.

## Aorist.

تَمَّيْجَكْ اُولَهْ	تَمَّامِشْ اُولَهْ	تَمَزْ اُولَهْ	تَهْمِيَهْ
تَهْمِيَهْ جَكْ ...	تَهْمَامِشْ ...	تَهْمَزْ ...	تَهْمِيَهْ

## Past.

تَمَّيْجَكْ اُولِيْدِي	تَمَّامِشْ اُولِيْدِي	تَمَزْ اُولِيْدِي	تَهْمِيْدِي
تَهْمِيَهْ جَكْ ...	تَهْمَامِشْ ...	تَهْمَزْ ...	تَهْمِيْدِي

## Conditional.

## Aorist.

تَمَّيْجَكْ اُولْسَهْ	تَمَّامِشْ اُولْسَهْ	تَمَزْ اُولْسَهْ	تَهْمِيَهْ
تَهْمِيَهْ جَكْ ...	تَهْمَامِشْ ...	تَهْمَزْ ...	تَهْمِيَهْ

## Active Participles.

## Present.

تَمَّيْجَكْ اُولَانْ	تَمَّامِشْ اُولَانْ	تَمَزْ اُولَانْ	تَهْمِيَانْ
تَهْمِيَهْ جَكْ ...	تَهْمَامِشْ ...	تَهْمَزْ ...	تَهْمِيَانْ

## Aorist.

تَهْمَزْ	تَهْمَزْ أُولُورْ	تَهْمَاشْ أُولُورْ	تَهْمَيَّجْ أُولُورْ
تَهْمَزْ	تَهْمَزْ ...	تَهْمَاشْ ...	تَهْمَيَّجْ ...

## ... Past.

تَهْمَاشْ	تَهْمَزْ أُولُوشْ	(not used)	تَهْمَيَّجْ أُولُوشْ
تَهْمَاشْ	تَهْمَزْ ...	(not used)	تَهْمَيَّجْ ...

## .. Perfect.

تَهْمَدِ	تَهْمَزْ أُولَدِ	تَهْمَاشْ أُولَدِ	تَهْمَيَّجْ أُولَدِ
تَهْمَدِ	تَهْمَزْ ...	تَهْمَاشْ ...	تَهْمَيَّجْ ...

## Future.

تَهْمَيَّجْ	تَهْمَزْ أُولَجْ	تَهْمَاشْ أُولَجْ	(not used)
تَهْمَيَّجْ	تَهْمَزْ ...	تَهْمَاشْ ...	(not used)

## Passive Participles.

## Aorist.

تَهْمَدِ	تَهْمَزْ أُولَدِ	تَهْمَاشْ أُولَدِ	تَهْمَيَّجْ أُولَدِ
تَهْمَدِ	تَهْمَزْ ...	تَهْمَاشْ ...	تَهْمَيَّجْ ...

## Future.

تَهْمَيَّجْ	تَهْمَزْ أُولَجْ	تَهْمَاشْ أُولَجْ	(not used)
تَهْمَيَّجْ	تَهْمَزْ ...	تَهْمَاشْ ...	(not used)

*Verbal Nouns.**Present.*

تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ اُولَمَهْ	تَهْمَامِشْ اُولَمَهْ	تَهْمَزْ اُولَمَهْ	تَهْمَامَهْ
تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ ...	تَهْمَامِشْ ...	تَهْمَزْ ...	تَهْمَامَهْ

*Perfect.*

تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ اُولَدُقْ	تَهْمَامِشْ اُولَدُقْ	تَهْمَزْ اُولَدُقْ	تَهْمَدِكْ
تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ ...	تَهْمَامِشْ ...	تَهْمَزْ ...	تَهْمَدِكْ

*Future.*

تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ	تَهْمَامِشْ اُولَجَقْ	تَهْمَزْ اُولَجَقْ	(not used)
تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ	تَهْمَامِشْ ...	تَهْمَزْ ...	(not used)

*Gerunds.*

1st.	<div> <div>تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ اُولُوبْ</div> <div>تَهْمَامِشْ اُولُوبْ</div> <div>تَهْمَزْ اُولُوبْ</div> <div>تَهْمِيُوبْ</div> </div>	<div> <div>تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ اُولُوبْ</div> <div>تَهْمَامِشْ اُولُوبْ</div> <div>تَهْمَزْ اُولُوبْ</div> <div>تَهْمِيُوبْ</div> </div>	<div> <div>تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ اُولُوبْ</div> <div>تَهْمَامِشْ اُولُوبْ</div> <div>تَهْمَزْ اُولُوبْ</div> <div>تَهْمِيُوبْ</div> </div>
2nd.	<div> <div>تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ اُولَرَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمَامِشْ اُولَرَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمَزْ اُولَرَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمِيَرَكْ</div> </div>	<div> <div>تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ اُولَرَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمَامِشْ اُولَرَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمَزْ اُولَرَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمِيَرَكْ</div> </div>	<div> <div>تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ اُولَرَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمَامِشْ اُولَرَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمَزْ اُولَرَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمِيَرَكْ</div> </div>
3rd.	<div> <div>تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ اُولَنَجَهْ</div> <div>تَهْمَامِشْ اُولَنَجَهْ</div> <div>تَهْمَزْ اُولَنَجَهْ</div> <div>تَهْمِيَنَجَهْ</div> </div>	<div> <div>تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ اُولَنَجَهْ</div> <div>تَهْمَامِشْ اُولَنَجَهْ</div> <div>تَهْمَزْ اُولَنَجَهْ</div> <div>تَهْمِيَنَجَهْ</div> </div>	<div> <div>تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ اُولَنَجَهْ</div> <div>تَهْمَامِشْ اُولَنَجَهْ</div> <div>تَهْمَزْ اُولَنَجَهْ</div> <div>تَهْمِيَنَجَهْ</div> </div>
4th.	<div> <div>تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ اُولِيَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمَامِشْ اُولِيَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمَزْ اُولِيَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمِيِيَقْ</div> </div>	<div> <div>تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ اُولِيَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمَامِشْ اُولِيَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمَزْ اُولِيَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمِيِيَقْ</div> </div>	<div> <div>تَهْمِيَهْ جَاكْ اُولِيَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمَامِشْ اُولِيَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمَزْ اُولِيَقْ</div> <div>تَهْمِيِيَقْ</div> </div>

5th.	{	تَجْمَعُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَزُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَشُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَعُ أَولَهُ
		تَجْمَعُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَزُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَشُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَعُ أَولَهُ
6th.	{	تَجْمَعُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَزُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَشُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَعُ أَولَهُ
		تَجْمَعُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَزُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَشُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَعُ أَولَهُ
7th.	{	تَجْمَعُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَزُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَشُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَعُ أَولَهُ
		تَجْمَعُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَزُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَشُ أَولَهُ	تَجْمَعُ أَولَهُ

## SECTION XVII.

*The Dubitative, Potential and Facile Verbs, &c.*

The Dubitative Verb is formed by adding the syllable *مَشْ* (mlsh, mîsh), or the word *إِمْشْ* (lmlsh), to any personal verb, indicative or necessitative, active or passive, affirmative, negative, or impotential; but, in the perfect indicative, it displaces the syllable *دِ* (dl) of the root. It casts a doubt on what is said; and is often added, in conversation, by another speaker, to express that he considers what has been affirmed by the former speaker to be questionable, or hearsay, or mere assumption. When the first speaker uses it himself, he does so to express that what he relates is either doubtful, hearsay, or erroneous assumption, from some other person. It is a gross vulgarism, to which Armenians and European novices are addicted, to use this dubitative syllable, in conversation, where

the *دی* of the perfect indicative, or of any compound tense, is required. In writing, there is no denying that this form is systematically used, by the best authorities, in place of the tense they would employ in speaking. The form has a more musical sound ; and it is, in my opinion, a fruit of imitating Persian verb-forms in Turkish ; initiated, probably, by the Persian scribes of the early reigns.

In dubitative conjugation, this syllable *مِشْ* follows the simple tense-root and its plural, preceding the compound and personal terminations, singular or plural ; unless it be spoken by another person. In this last case, it naturally comes alone, after all other words. Thus : *تَپْیُورْمِشْ* (*tèplyòrmlshlm*) it is said, supposed, pretended, suggested, &c., that I am kicking ; *تَپْیُورْمِشْ ایدِکْ* (*tèplyòrmlsh idlñ*) it is said, &c., that thou wast kicking ; *تَپْرایْمِشْ* (*tèpèr lmlsh*) it is said, &c., that he kicks ; *تَپْرْمِشْ ایدِکْ* (*tèpèrmlsh idlk*) it is said, &c., that we used to kick ; *تَپْمِشْ سِکْزْ* (*tèpmlsh slñlz*) it is said, &c., that you kicked or have kicked ; *تَپْجَکْزْ اِیْمِشْ* (*tèpèjèklèr lmlsh*) it is said, &c., that they are going to kick. (This word or syllable, *مِشْ*, *ایْمِشْ*, is really the past active participle of the obsolete verb *ایَمَکْ*.)

The Potential Verb is formed of the fifth gerund (not repeated) followed by the verb *بِلَمَکْ* (*blmèk*) in its entire conjugation, the gerund remaining unchanged throughout. This auxiliary verb then means *to be able*, and answers to our



English *can*. Ex.: تَهْ بِلْمَكْ (tèpè blmèk) *to be able to kick*; تَهْ بِلْيُورِمْ (tèpè bllyòrim) *I am able to kick, I can kick*; &c.

The Facile Verb is formed by the root of a verb, to which an èsèrè is added, followed by a vowel ى and the auxiliary verb وَيَرْمَكْ (virmèk, *vulg.* vèrmèk). With a vowel verb other than one in ى, a consonantal ى, with èsèrè, is added between the root-vowel and the servile ى vowel; and with a verb in vowel ى, this is made into a consonant with èsèrè, and the servile vowel ى is then added; as, تَيْسِيرْمَكْ (tèpl-virmèk), قَابَلَايِيرْمَكْ (qâplâyî-virmèk), أَوْقُيُورْمَكْ (òqüyü-virmèk), قَازِيلْيِيرْمَكْ (qâzilyî-virmèk). The sense of these verbs is that of great ease, readiness, off-handedness in the action, which we express in English by saying *just to kick, just to give a kick; just to cover over; just to read or recite; just to scratch out*; &c.

There are several other Turkish verbs in use as special auxiliaries after the gerund of the original verb; as, كَلَمَكْ (gâlmèk), دُورَمَقْ (dûrmâq), قَالَمَقْ (qâlmâq), يَاتَمَقْ (yâtmâq), and يَازَمَقْ (yâzmâq). The first expresses a frequent or natural happening; the next three signify persistency; and the last the idea of having almost happened, of being within an ace of happening. Thus, أُولَهْ كَلَمَكْ (òlâ gâlmèk) *to happen frequently, of course, as is well known; to be a common occurrence*; بَاقُوبْ دُورَمَقْ (bâqûp dûrmâq) *to stand looking*; بَاقْدْ قَالَمَقْ (bâqâ

qâlmâq) to stand (remain) staring in surprise and amazement ;  
 دُشْنُوبُ يَاتَمَقْ (dûshûnûp yâtmâq) to remain (lie) pondering, in  
 a brown study ; بَايِلَهْ يَازَمَقْ (bâyîlâ yâzmâq) to give one's self up  
 (write) as about to faint ; &c., &c., &c.

### SECTION XVIII. *The Verb Substantive.*

In Turkish there is no *extant* verb substantive, answering in all its moods and tenses to our verb *to be*. In one sense, the Turkish اُولَمَقْ performs the office, as an auxiliary and as an independent verb ; but as such, it is a verb adjective, and continually lapses into the parallel idea of *to become*.

The Turkish originally had a true verb substantive, اِيَمَكْ (îmek) *to be*. This exists fragmentarily in Ottoman Turkish ; perhaps in certain persons of the present, certainly in the perfect of the indicative, in the aorist conditional, in the past active participle, in the perfect verbal noun, and in the gerund, apparently modified from the present active participle (which in eastern and old Turkish was and is formed in كَانَ or غَانَ, even قَانَ, traces of which are numerous in Ottoman, as adjectives). Thus :

#### *Indicative.*

Present. اِيَم (îm, îm), يِم (yîm, yîm) *I am* ; سِيْن (sîn, sîn)  
*thou art* ; اِيَزْ (îz, îz), يَزْ (yîz, yîz) *we are* ; سِيْكَزْ (sîñîz,  
 sîñîz) *you are*.

Perfect. اَيْدِمُ (idl̥m) *I was*, اَيْدِكْ (idl̥ñ) *thou wast*, اَيْدِي (idl̥) *he was*; اَيْدِكْ (idl̥k) *we were*; اَيْدِيكِرْ (idl̥ñlz) *you were*; اَيْدِيلِرْ (idl̥l̥r) *they were*.

*Conditional Aorist.*

اَيْسَمُ (l̥s̥ám) *if I am*, اَيْسَكْ (l̥s̥áñ) *if thou art*, اَيْسَهْ (l̥s̥è) *if he is*; اَيْسَكْ (l̥s̥èk) *if we are*, اَيْسَكِرْ (l̥s̥áñlz) *if you are*, اَيْسَلِرْ (l̥s̥èl̥r) *if they are*.

*Past Active Participle.*

اَيْمِشْ (l̥m̥l̥sh) *who or which was*.

*Verbal Noun Perfect.*

اَيْدِكْ (idl̥k) *the fact of having been*.

*Gerund.*

اَيْكَنْ (lk̥èn, old اَيْكَانْ lk̥àn) *during the fact of being*.

These fragments are made negative by prefixing the adverb (دِيكِلْ dilyl) *not*. Thus, دِيكِلْمُ (dilyl̥l̥m) *I am not*, دِيكِلْمُ اَيْدِمُ (dilyl̥l̥m idl̥m) *I was not*; دِيكِلْمُ اَيْسَمُ (dilyl̥l̥m l̥s̥ám) *if I am not*; دِيكِلْمُ اَيْدِكْ (dilyl̥l̥m idl̥k) *not used as a verbal noun, but replaced by اَوْلَمَادِقْ (òlmādīq) the negative verbal noun perfect of اَوْلَقْ (òlwāq); دِيكِلْمُ اَيْكَنْ (dilyl̥l̥m lk̥èn) while not being*.

The present tense indicative of the foregoing fragmentary verb is completed, as to its third persons, singular and plural,

by using, when necessary only, the special, unique, and most distinctive Turkish invariable particle of affirmation, **دِرْ** (dlr, dlr) *is*, and its conventional (unnecessary) plural, **دِرْلَرْ** (dlrlr, dirlâr) *are* (which is just as well expressed by the singular).

This word **دِرْ**, written in eastern Turkish **دُرْ** (dûr), as it is still pronounced in provincial Ottoman, is often found also, in old and eastern writings, under the uncontracted form of **دورور** (dûrûr). This circumstance leads to a suspicion that the word is, originally, the aorist of the ordinary verb **دورمق** (dûrmâq) *to remain*.

However that may be, the peculiarity of the word is that it is not special to the third person singular, or to the two third persons, singular and plural. It is often used, in writing and in conversation, after a verb of the first or second person also, singular or plural, of any simple tense of the indicative, with or without the plural sign **لَرْ**, when the sense admits it. It is, in fact, an exact equivalent to the French inchoative expression *c'est que*, and the Latin *constat quod*, which can be used to introduce any indicative proposition, as the Turkish **دِرْ** is used to conclude and complete any such. And, as the French and Latin clauses can be omitted without the sense suffering, so also can the Turkish **دِرْ**. In conversation it is much more dispensed with than used.

The negative of **دِرْ** is **دِرْ دِيكِلْ** (dljll dlr) *is not*; pl. **دِيكِلَرْ** (dijkilr).

(dlylllër dlr) and دِيَكِلْ دِرْلِرْ (dlyl dlrllër) are not (just as well expressed without the لِرْ).

SECTION XIX. *The Verb of Presence and Absence, of Existence and Non-Existence.*

THERE ARE NO SUCH VERBS IN TURKISH. What there are, and what Europeans have erroneously chosen to designate as such, are two *adjectives*, وَارْ (vâr) *present* or *existent*, يَوْقْ (yòq) *absent* or *non-existent*. Like any other substantive or adjective, these may be followed by the verbal particle of affirmation دِرْ, which, in this case, as in any other case, may be omitted in conversation.

It may be convenient, occasionally, for a novice in Turkish to suppose that وَارْ or وَارْ دِرْ means *there is*; that يَوْقْ or يَوْقْ دِرْ means *there is not*. But, unless rightly understood, those renderings are misleading. The expressions really say and mean *he, she, or it, is present (or existent)*; *he, she, or it, is absent (or non-existent)*; as, آتَشْ وَارْ (âtêsh vâ'r) *fire (is) present (here), or existent (somewhere)*; آتَشْ يَوْقْ (âtêsh yòq) *fire (is) absent (here), or non-existent (anywhere)*.

Then, such a phrase as وَارْ اَوْلْ (vâr 0l) *be thou present (or existent)*, يَوْقْ اَوْلْ (yòq 0l) *be thou absent (or non-existent)*, becomes clear. The first is a kind of prayer, *Mayest thou ever exist, and be at hand, ready to help the afflicted!* while the

second is a condemnation, a sentence of banishment or annihilation, or a wish in the nature of a curse, *Away! Avaunt!* &c.

By using a locative with these two expressions, they become special instead of general : جَيْمَدَه پَارَه وَارَ (jèblmdê pârâ var) *in my pocket money is present* (I have some money in my pocket) ; اَوِيْمَدَه اُوْطُوْنُم يُوْق اِيْدِي (èvlmdê ôdûnûm yôq idl) *in my house my firewood was absent, wanting, non-existent* (I had no firewood in my house).

By using a possessive pronoun (with or without a genitive as well) with these two expressions, the idea of possession is superadded ; as, پَارَم وَارَ (pârâm var) *money belonging to me exists* (i. e., *I have money, I have some money*) ; پَارَانَّ يُوْق (pârân yôq) *money belonging to thee (is) non-existent* (i. e., *thou hast no money*) ; بَابَاسِنِكَ جُوْق كِتَابَلَرِي وَارَدِرْ (bâbâsınîk chôq ktâblârî var dîr) *many books belonging to his father are existent* (i. e., *his father has many books*) ; بَنِم سَكَا اِحْتِيَاجِم يُوْق اِيْدِي (bênîm sâkâ ihtiyâjîm yôq idl) *any need of mine to (lean on) thee (for assistance) was non-existent* (i. e., *I had no need of thee*).

## SECTION XX. *Of the Compound Verbs.*

Besides the Turkish verbs already described, the Ottoman language has been indefinitely enriched with whole classes of



compound verbs, active and passive, transitive and intransitive, formed by a Turkish auxiliary verb preceded by a substantive or adjective of Arabic or Persian, even of foreign, origin.

An active compound verb is formed, generally, by an Arabic, rarely by a Persian verbal noun, or by a foreign substantive, followed by one of the auxiliaries *اَيْتَمَكَ* (*itmék*, *vulg.* *ètmék*), *اَيْلَمَكَ* (*èylémék*), *قَيْلَمَقْ* (*qilmâq*) *to do*, or *بُيُورَمَقْ* (*büyürmâq*) *to command, to deign to do*; or by an Arabic (very seldom, a Persian, never a foreign) active participle, followed by the auxiliary *اُولَمَقْ* (*olmâq*) *to be*. These verbs are either transitive or intransitive. The first three auxiliaries are identical in sense; the first is the most frequently used; the second often, the third occasionally, replaces it, so as to avoid repetition; and the fourth is used when a deferential tone is assumed in speaking or writing to or of a superior, and politely to or of an equal. Thus, *اِرْسَالْ اَيْتَمَكَ* (*irsâl ètmék*) *to send*; *اِرْسَالْ بُيُورَمَقْ* (*irsâl büyürmâq*) *to deign or condescend to send, to favour by sending, to have the goodness to send*; *مُوجِبْ اُولَمَقْ* (*mûjib olmâq*) *to cause*; *تَوَطَّنْ اَيْلَمَكَ* (*tévâttûn èylémék*) *to settle* (in a place, as a home); *بَشِيمَانْ اُولَمَقْ* (*peshimân olmâq*) *to be regretfully or penitently sorry* (for some act); *وِزِيَتَهْ اَيْتَمَكَ* (*vizité ètmék*) *to visit, to pay a visit*.

Transitive verbs of this class form their passives with the auxiliary *اُولُنَمَقْ* (*olûnmâq*), which, by itself, does not admit of

translation. Thus, *اِرْسَالٌ اُولُمُقْ* (İrsāl olunmaq) *to be sent, to have done (to it) the action of being sent* (for the Arabic and Persian verbal nouns, the reverse of the more general Turkish rule, take the passive as well as the active sense). Deferential compound passives are formed with the passive auxiliary *يُؤرُلْمَقْ* (büyürülmək); as, *اِرْسَالٌ بَيُؤرُلْمَقْ* (İrsāl büyükülmək) *to be condescendingly sent, to be kindly sent*.

Reciprocal verbs active of this class are formed with the reciprocal of *اَيَقَمَكْ*, that is, with the auxiliary *اَيِدِشْمَكْ* (İdîshmek); as, *خُصُومَتٌ اَيِدِشْمَكْ* (Khûsûmèt İdîshmek) *mutually to exercise hostility, litigation, or spite, towards one another*.

Causatives of the simple and reciprocal are formed by the causatives of *اَيَقَمَكْ* and *اَيِدِشْمَكْ*, namely, *اَيْتَدِرْمَكْ*, *اَيِدِشْدِرْمَكْ*; thus, *اِرْسَالٌ اَيْتَدِرْمَكْ* *to cause or let (a thing) be sent*; *خُصُومَتٌ اَيِدِشْدِرْمَكْ* *to cause or let (two or more) mutually attack each other*.

Negatives and impotentials, as also dubitatives, potentials, and faciles, are constructed with those forms of *اَيَقَمَكْ* and the other auxiliaries. Thus, *اِرْسَالٌ اَيَقَمَامَكْ* *not to send*; *اِرْسَالٌ اَيِدِه مَامَكْ* *not to be able to send*; *اِرْسَالٌ اَيَقَمِشْ* *it is said that he sent*; *اِرْسَالٌ اَيِدِه يَلْمَكْ* *to be able to send*; *اِرْسَالٌ اَيِدِيُورْمَكْ* *just to send*.

SECTION XXI. *Of the Interrogative Verb, and Interrogation in general.*

All interrogations, in Turkish (when an interrogative pronoun is not present in the phrase, as such), are made by introducing the interrogative particle or adverb *می* (ml, mî) into its proper position in the phrase.

The proper position of this particle in the phrase is the end of the word on which the question turns. We have no equivalent for it in English; in Latin the word *an*, and the enclitic particle *ne*, are its equivalents; also the French *est-ce que*?

This may be best shown by an example of five elements, each of which may be the word on which the question specially turns, so that the adverb *می* is successively joined to each of them to indicate that speciality. Thus :

1. سَفَى صَبَاحَ يَهْلَهُ عَرَبِيَه بِنَه جَكْسِينْ (sânmî sâbâh bēnlmlâ 'ārâ-bâyâ blnējeksīn)

Is it *thou* who art to ride with me to-morrow in the carriage?

2. سَنَ صَبَاحِي يَهْلَهُ عَرَبِيَه بِنَه جَكْسِينْ (sân sâbâhmî bēnlmlâ 'ārâ-bâyâ bēnējeksīn)

Is it *to-morrow* that thou art to ride with me in the carriage?

3. سَنَ صَبَاحَ يَهْلَهُ مِي عَرَبِيَه بِنَه جَكْسِينْ (sân sâbâh bēnlmlâmi 'ārâ-bâyâ blnējeksīn)

Is it with *me* that thou art to ride in the carriage to-morrow?

4. سَنَ صَبَاحَ بَمَلِّهِ عَرَبِيَّ بِنَجَاسِيْنَ (sân sâbâh bəmīmlâ 'ārābayâ-  
mī blnējēksln)

Is it in the carriage that thou art to ride with me to-morrow?

5. سَنَ صَبَاحَ بَمَلِّهِ عَرَبِيَّ بِنَجَاسِيْنَ (sân sâbâh bəmīmlâ 'ārābayâ  
blnējēkmlsln)

Art thou going to ride with me to-morrow in the carriage?

This does not, however, exhaust the possible points of the question in the case of this sentence, nor the proper places of the adverb *بِي* in it. The phrase itself may be in question, as to whether these words were used, or some others, by the person to whom the interrogation is addressed. In that case, the adverb *بِي* would stand after the personal ending of the verb; سَنَ صَبَاحَ بَمَلِّهِ عَرَبِيَّ بِنَجَاسِيْنَ *بِي* (sân sâbâh bəmīmlâ 'ārābayâ blnējēksln mī), which means, *Dost thou say, thou wilt ride with me to-morrow in the carriage?*

The last two instances call specially for the explanation that, in compound verbs the proper place of the adverb *بِي* may be between the two elements of the verb. Thus we may ask, اِرْسَالِي اِيْدَعَجْ Is it to send (and not himself carry, for instance) that he is going to do? and اِرْسَالِي اِيْدَعَجْ *بِي* (İrsāl İdejēkmlī) Is he going to send?

In Turkish simple or derivative verbs, supposing that the adverb *بِي* is to follow the verb in the sentence, and not some

other member thereof, then a further question is seen to arise in No. 5 above given, as to the exact part of the verb itself that takes this word after it. In this respect, the tenses have first to be considered. The simple tenses take the adverb at the end of the tense-root, and their compounds also, before their auxiliary ایدی; thus, ایدیورمی is he doing? ایدیورمی was he doing? Next, a distinction has to be made between the third persons, singular and plural, as one group, and the first and second persons, singular and plural also, as another group. The first-named group of tenses have no personal endings, the second group have special personal endings, and the interrogative precedes these, following the tense-root still; thus, تپورمیسین (tèplyòrmlym) am I kicking? تپورمیسین (tèplyòrmlym) art thou kicking? تپورمی (tèplyòrml) is he kicking? تپورمیز (tèplyòrmlylz) are we kicking? تپورمیسکز (tèplyòrmlyskz) are you kicking? تپورکرمی (tèplyòrlèrml) are they kicking?

The perfect tense indicative forms an exception to the foregoing rule, as it takes the interrogative after the personal endings. Thus, تپدیمی (tèpdlmml) have I kicked? did I kick? تپدیمی (tèpdlmml) hast thou kicked? didst thou kick? تپدیمی (tèpdlmml) has he kicked? did he kick? تپدیمی (tèpdlkml) have we kicked? did we kick? تپدیکرمی (tèpdlkrlzml) have you kicked? did you kick? تپدیلرمی (tèpdlèrml) have they kicked? did they kick?

SECTION XXII. *Of Adverbial Expressions.*

As explained in Section II., every Turkish adjective is also an adverb.

Every noun of time is also used as an adverb ; as, صَبَاحَ كُلِّ (sābāh gāl) *come to-morrow* ; أَرَكْنَ كُلِّ (érkən gāldl) *he came early* ; أَخْشَامَ كُلِّ (ākhshām gēllr) *he will come in the evening*.

Adjectives of relative place, like all adjectives, are used as adverbs ; thus, يُوْقَارِيْ جِيْقِيْ (yūqārī chīq) *mount up, walk up, climb up, ascend* ; أَشَاغِيْ كُلِّ (āshāghī gāl) *come down, descend* ; اِيْلَرُوْ كِيْتْ (ilērl gīt) *go forward, advance* ; كِيْرُوْ كُلِّ (gērl gāl) *come back*.

But substantives of place, like all substantives, can be used adverbially by the sole means of being joined to prepositions ; thus, يُوْقَارِيْدَا اُوْتُوْرِيُوْر (yūqārīdā ōtūrlyör) *he is sitting higher up* ; أَشَاغِيْدَانْ كِيْلِيُوْرْمْ (āshāghīdān gēllyörüm) *I am coming from below* ; صَاغِهْ كِيْتْ (sāghā gīt) *go to the right* ; &c.

A possessive pronoun may enter into such an adverbial expression ; as, اُوْسْتَمَهْ جِيْقِيْدِيْ (ūstūmah chīqdī) *he mounted on to the top of me*.

An adjective, substantive, and preposition may join to form an adverbial expression ; as, اَلْتْ طَرَفَدَهْ (ālt tārāfdā) *on the lower side, lower down* ; اَلْتْ طَرَفْدَانْ (ālt tārāfdān) *from the lower side ; from lower down*.



So an adjective, substantive, possessive, and preposition may be combined in an adverbial expression ; as, اُرُسْتُ يَإَمِّمِ (ʾust yāʾimma) *to the side above me* ; اَلْتَّ يَإِنِّكِدِه (ʾalt yāʾinīdā) *on the side below thee* ; صَاغُ طَرَفِنْدَنْ (sāgh tārāʾfīndān) *from his (her, its) right-hand side*.

With certain special exceptions, any Arabic substantive or adjective becomes an adverb by adding an ʾustān and vowel ʾ to it ; this being often marked with a double ʾustān sign, and read ān ; or, if the word is a feminine in ة, by putting two dots, with or without the double ʾustān sign to it, without an ʾ ; thus, طَوَّلًا (tūlān) *in length, longwise, in longitude* ; عَرْضًا (ʿarzān) *in breadth, breadthwise, in latitude* ; بَرًّا وَبَحْرًا (berrān uḥ bahrān) *by land and by sea* ; مُقَدِّمًا (muqāddimā) *formerly* ; مُؤَخَّرًا (mūʾakhkhārān) *latterly, recently* ; قَاطِبَةً وَقَاطِبَةً (qāt ān vè qātībētān) *decidedly and entirely*.

The first ten Arabic ordinals are thus much used adverbially ; as, أَوَّلًا (ʾavvālā) *firstly* ; ثَانِيًا (sāniyā) *secondly* ; ثَالِثًا (sālīsā) *thirdly* ; رَابِعًا (rābiʿā) *fourthly* ; خَامِسًا (khāmlsā) *fifthly* ; سَادِسًا (sādīsā) *sixthly* ; سَابِعًا (sābiʿā) *seventhly* ; ثَامِنًا (sāminē) *eighthly* ; تَاسِعًا (tāsiʿā) *ninthly* ; عَاشِرًا (ʿāshirā) *tenthly*.

SECTION XXIII. *Of Prepositions.*

They always follow the substantive or pronoun. Besides those given in the chapter on the substantive, there are but four or five others : **أَوْزَرَهُ** (ûzerè) *upon*, **جِهَ** (jè, jâ) *according to*, **سِرْ** (slz) and **سِرِينَ** (slzln) *without*, **لَيْنَ** (lèyn) *at the time of, after the manner of*.

SECTION XXIV. *Of Conjunctions.*

The conjunctions **دَ** (dâ) and **نَخِي** (dâkhî) *also*, follow the word they unite to a preceding one ; as, **كِيْدَرْسَنَ بَنَدَهْ كِيْدِرِمَ** (gldersân, bèn-dâ gldèrlm) *if thou wilt go, I also will go* ; **بُوْدَخِي** (bû dâkhî) *this, too*.

All other conjunctions head the clauses which they connect.

The principal of these are : **وَ** (vè, in Persian couplets read û, ù) *and* ; **أَمَّا** (âmmâ), **لَكِنْ** (lâkln), **وَلَكِنْ** (vè-lâkln) *but* ; **أَفْجَقْ** (ânjâq) *only* ; **أَكْرَ** (èyèr, ègèr) *if* ; **يَاخُوْدَ** (yâkhòd) *or* ; **يَا...يَا...** (yâ...yâ...) *either... or...* ; **نَهْ...نَهْ...** (nè...nè...) *neither... nor...* ; **حَتَّى** (hâttâ) *insomuch that* ; **مَكْرَ** (mèyèr, mègèr) *unless* ; **إِمْدِي** (lmdl) *therefore, wherefore* ; **زِيرَا** (zîrâ) *for, because* ; **جُونَكُ** (chûnkû) *since, by reason that* ; **كِهْ** (kl) *that* ; **تَا** (tâ) *so that, in order that* ; as far as. Of these, some are Turkish, some Arabic, others Persian in origin.

SECTION XXV. *Of Interjections.*

These are mostly Arabic or Persian in origin. They precede, as in English. The principal are : أَيْ (èy), يَا (yā) *O* ; أَهْ (āh) *ah* ; أَيُّوَاهْ (èywāh) *alas* ; خَيْفْ (khāyf) *woe* ; مَدَدْ (mèdèd) *help* ; أَفَرِينَ (āfērīn, *vulg.* āfērīm) *bravo*.

There is, however, a peculiar Turkish interjection آ (ā) *O*, that joins on to the vocative following it ; as, أَبَا (ā-bābā) *O father* ; أُمَّا (ā-ānā) *O mother*. It also follows nouns, pronouns, and verbs, taking the sense of *Yes ! Indeed ! I told you so ! You see now !* as, آدَمَا (ādām-ā) *a man* ; *you see !* كُوزَلَا (gyūzèl-ā) *nice* ; *indeed !* بِنِمَا (bènlm-ā) *mine* ; *in sooth !* كُورَمَدِكَ (gyūrèmdā-dīn-ā) *thou couldst not see ; after all !*

## CHAPTER III.

## THE OTTOMAN SYNTAX.

SECTION I. *Conversational brevity. Precision in writing.*

COLLOQUIAL and written Ottoman Turkish, as far as Syntax is concerned, are the very antipodes of each other.

As in the orthography the rule is given : “Never introduce a vowel-letter into a Turkish or foreign word without removing a possible doubt as to pronunciation ; never leave out a vowel in such a word, if by the omission a doubt is created as to pronunciation,”—that is, be always as concise as is possible without falling into ambiguity ; so also, in colloquial syntax the chief rule is : *Never repeat a word, or introduce its equivalent, and never use a subsidiary word, unless for the sake of emphasis* ; whereas the golden rule for written language is, *Never omit any word that tends to make a sentence clear and explicit. On the contrary, introduce freely as many new words as may, in the requisite degree, elucidate the sense sought to be conveyed.* In other words, *Spoken Ottoman Turkish should be as concise as possible, even to the verge of ambiguity ;*

*written Ottoman Turkish must be as full, verbally, as to leave no doubt on the mind of the reader at any distance of space or time.* The reasons are obvious and eminently practical, philosophical; namely: If, by reason of a speaker's conciseness, a doubt as to his meaning should arise in the mind of the person addressed, a question can be put, and the doubt at once removed; if, on the contrary, a written document be left obscure in any part, the doubt thence arising must remain unsolved, and the meaning guessed at, because the writer is either dead or away at a distance.

Hence, if one be asked, <sup>°</sup>بُونَه دِرْ (būnê dîr) *what is this?* the answer, in Ottoman Turkish, will be, for instance, <sup>°</sup>آلْمَا (êlmâ) *an apple*, as in English. (A Frenchman would answer: "*C'est une pomme.*") Should the question be, <sup>°</sup>قَرْنَدَاشِیْمِی کُورْدِیْکُزْمِی (qârdâshîmî [vulg. qârdâshîmî] gyûrdânûz-mû) *have you seen my brother?* the answer will be, either <sup>°</sup>کُورْدُمْ (gyûrdûm) *I have seen (him)*, or <sup>°</sup>کُورْمَدِمْ (gyûrmâdîm) *I have not seen (him)*. Should one say to you, <sup>°</sup>بُونُی سَکَا وَرَسَمَ یَرْمِیْسِیْنِ (bûnû sâkâ vèrsâm, yèr-mî-sî-n) *If I give this to thee (you), wilt thou (will you) eat (it)?* the answer will be either <sup>°</sup>یَرِمْ (yèrm) *I will eat (it)*, or <sup>°</sup>یَعَامْ (yèmâm) *I will not eat (it)*. In this last question, the omission of "it," even by the asker, is to be remarked.

As instances of the omission of all possible subsidiary words from phrases in conversation, may be mentioned that of the

affirmative **دِر** (dlr) *is, it is, he or she is*, on all occasions of ordinary assertion or negation. The personal and corroborative possessive pronouns are never employed in conversation unless for emphasis or distinction; as, **سَوِيُورِم** (sāvlyörüm) *I love* (thee, you, him, her, it), **سَنِ سَوِيُورِم** (sânl sāvlyörüm) *I love thee* (you), **بَنِ سَنِ سَوِيُورِم** (bên sânl ...) *I, personally, love thee*; **بَابَامْ كَلْدِي** (bâbâm gâldi) *my father came, or has come*.

As a consequence of the desire to leave no doubt as to the meaning of a writing, nouns and verbs in apposition, in pairs, are much used; such are, **وَدِّ وَ مَحَبَّتْ** (vıdd ü mâhâbbet) *friendship*, **تَحْرِيرُ وَ نَسْطِيرُ اُولُنْدِي** (tâhîr ü tâstîr olündü) *has been written*.

A result of the avoidance of unnecessary repetition is that the third person singular of a verb is often employed instead of its plural when the nominative plural is expressed; as, **آدَمَلَرْ كَلْدِي** (âdâmlâr gâldi) *some men, or the men have come, or came*.

Another such result is the use of a singular substantive with a plural cardinal number; as, **اُوجْ آتْ** (üç ât) *three horses*, **بِيكْ عَرَبَه** (blñ 'arâbâ) *a thousand vehicles* (carriages, carts, waggons, &c.).

To make written composition still more precise, it is very usual, after introducing a common substantive or a proper name into a paragraph or article, letter, dispatch, &c., never to use a personal pronoun to designate the thing or person



so named, but to repeat the substantive or proper name as often as may be required, either preceded or followed by one of the indicative adjectives, مَزْبُورٌ (mèzbūr), مَذْكُورٌ (mèzkyūr), for things or persons, مَسْفُورٌ (mèsfūr), for a condemned or criminal person, مُومَى إِلَيْهِ (mūmā llèy-h), for a reputable person, and مُشَارٌ إِلَيْهِ (mūshārūn llèy-h), for a person of rank and consideration. These words all mean, in reality, *the afore-said, the afore-mentioned, the said, &c.* In the case of a *person* first mentioned by name, or by a common substantive, these words may be used as substantives,—we might say,—as a kind of personal or demonstrative pronoun, in all the cases of the declension; but, in the case of a *thing*, they must be used as adjectives to its name, repeated each time.

## SECTION II. *Syntax of the Substantive.*

A common noun substantive singular may be either definite or indefinite, and may represent, according to circumstances or the context, either an individual or the individual, several individuals, a portion of the species, or the whole species; as, بَاغِحَةٌ كُوزَلْ شَى (bāghchā gyūzèl shèy) *a garden (is) a pretty thing*; پَادِشَاهُ كَلْدِي (pādīshāh gāldī) *the monarch came, or has come*; اِنْكَلْتَرَادَهْ كَمِي جُوقْ (inglītērādā gēmī chōq) *in England (there are)*

*many ships* ; جِيحَكْ بَاغْچَهْنِكْ زِينَتِي دَرِ (chichék bâghchânîk zîneti dlr) *flowers are the ornaments of the gardens, of the garden* ; صُوايْجِدِمُ (sû lehdlm) *I drank (some) water, I drank water (not wine, &c.)*, صُواقَارُ (sû âqâr) *water flows*.

In the accusative case indefinite, the substantive is as in the nominative ; as, صُوايْجِمَكْ (sû lehmeék) *to drink water (some water)*. If the declensional accusative is used, it is always definite ; as, صُويُيْ إِيْجِدِمُ (sûyû lehdlm) *I drank, or have drunk, the water*.

There are four different Turkish methods of constructing two substantives in a sentence. First, by simple juxtaposition ; second, by adding the possessive suffix of the third person to the second substantive ; third, by putting the first in the genitive, and still adding the possessive suffix to the second ; and fourth, by putting the first in some other prepositional case, and leaving the second unchanged.

In simple juxtaposition of two substantives, the first indicates a material, the second a form ; or, the first indicates a quantity, the second a material ; as, اَلْتُونُ قُوْطَى (âltûn qûtû) *a gold box* ; بِرْكِسِلَهْ آرَبَهْ (bir kilè ârpâ) *a bushel (of) barley* ; اِيْكِ سَاعَتْلِكْ يَوْلُ (îkl sâ'âtlik yòl) *a distance of two hours journey* ; اُوْچُ سَتْرِيْلِكْ چُرَقَهْ (ûch setrilik chòhâ) *broadcloth enough for three coats*.

With the possessive suffix alone added, a relation of genus and species is indicated, the genus standing last, and the combination remaining indefinite; as, كِتَابٌ قَابِي (kl̥tāb qābī) *a book-cover*; أَوْ كُوَيْكِي (ʔv kyûpēyl) *a house (domestic) dog*; يَبَانٌ أَوْرَدَكِي (yābān ʔrdēyl) *a duck of the wilderness (wild duck)*. If the first is a proper name, the second is the species, the first the name of the individual, and the combination is definite; as, أَزَاقٌ دَكِي (ʔzāq dēnlzl) *the Sea of Azof*.

With the first in the genitive, real possession is indicated, the name of the possessor being the first, and the combination is definite; as, قِرَالِكْ عَسْكَرِي (qīrālīñ ʔskērl) *the king's army*; بَابَاْمِكْ أَوِي (bābāmīñ ʔvl) *my father's house*.

When the first is put into a prepositional case, the second remains without a suffix, and the combination may be definite or indefinite, an active participle being always understood; as, شَهْرَهْ يُولْ (shēhrē yōl) *a (or the) road to the town*; دَمِيرْدَانْ كُوْپْرُ (dēmīrdān kyûprū) *a bridge of iron*; آيْدَهْ بَرَكْرَهْ (āydā blr kērrē) *once in a month*; &c.

When two substantives are in apposition, no change is made in either; as, جَاوُشْ آغَا (chāwūsh āghā) *Mr. Sergeant*; يَازِجِيْ أَفَنْدِي (yāzljī ʔfēndī) *Mr. Clerk*; مُشِيرْ پَاشَا (mūshīr pāshā) *the Pasha (who is) a Mushir*. Here, the generic word stands last, and the combination is definite. Sometimes, the specific word or

term is complex and obeys its own rules ; as, *أُونُ بَاشِي آغا* (ûn-bâshî âghâ) *Mr. Corporal* ; *مِيرَآلَايَ بَكْ* (mîr-âlây bék) *Squire Colonel* ; *مِيرِ لَوَا پَاشَا* (mîrî-llvâ pâshâ) *the Major-General Pasha*.

There are two exceptions to the rule that the generic word stands last, when the other word is a proper name. In all other cases with proper names, this rule holds good ; as, *أَسْمَا سُلْطَان* (esmâ sultân) *Princess Esma*, *عِزَّتْ مُوَلَّا* (izzèt molla) *Judge Izzet* ; *عَارِفْ أَفَنْدِي* ('arîf efendî) *Mr. 'Arif* ; &c. The exceptions are : 1, the word *سُلْطَان*, when applied to the sovereign before his name ; as, *سُلْطَانُ عَبْدُ الْحَمِيد* (sultân 'abdû-'l-hâmid) ; 2, the word *مُوَلَّا*, when applied to a student or school-boy, also before his name ; as, *مُوَلَّا رَاشِد* (molla râshîd) *school-boy Rashid*.

Any number of substantives may be in apposition, and one of them may be the proper name of the individual ; as, *أَوْغُلْمُ قَوْلُكُزْ* (oghluḡm qulûḡkuz) *your servant, my son* ; *أَوْغُلْمُ رَفِيقُ بَكْ قَوْلُكُزْ* (oghluḡm refîq bék qulûḡkuz) *your servant, my son, Refiq Bey* ; *أَوْغُلْمُ مِيرَآلَايَ رَفِيقُ بَكْ قَوْلُكُزْ* (oghluḡm mîr-âlây refîq bék qulûḡkuz) *your servant, my son, Colonel Refiq Bey* ; &c.

When a string of substantives in construction would in strictness require several of them consecutively to be put in

the genitive case, the monotonous cacophony of the repetition of the preposition is avoided by omitting it once or twice where most appropriate; thus, پَاشَانِکْ اَنَشْتَهْسِنِکْ دَايِيسِنِکْ اَوَغْلُنْکْ اَتِي (pāshānīk ʔnštēsīnīk dāyīsīnīk ʔghlūnūk ātī) *the horse of the son of the uncle of the brother-in-law of the pasha*, may be expressed in either of the following ways: پَاشَانِکْ اَنَشْتَهْسِي دَايِيسِي, or پَاشَا اَنَشْتَهْسِي دَايِيسِي اَوَغْلُنْکْ اَتِي, or پَاشَا اَنَشْتَهْسِي پَاشَانِکْ اَنَشْتَهْسِي دَايِيسِنِکْ اَوَغْلُنْکْ اَتِي, or پَاشَانِکْ اَنَشْتَهْسِي دَايِيسِنِکْ اَوَغْلُنْکْ اَتِي; the last genitive preposition being, perhaps, the most frequently retained and necessary.

Two or more Arabic or Persian substantives may be put in Persian construction with each other. Their order is then the reverse of what it would be in Turkish construction, just as in English *the king's horse* is in reverse order with *the horse of the king*. In Persian construction each preceding substantive of a series must be *vocally* connected with its consequent. This *vocal connexion* is effected by making the final quiescent consonant of the preceding substantive movent with èsèrè; thus, فَرْمَانِ شَاه (fèrmānī shāh) *the command of the king*; مَظْمُونِ فَرْمَانِ شَاهِ اِيْرَان (māzmūnū fèrmānī shāhī īrān) *the tenour of the command of the king of Persia*. But, if the last consonant of a preceding substantive is movent, and followed by a vowel-letter, a servile consonant must be introduced to support the èsèrè vowel of connexion; and this consonant varies

with the final vowel of the word. When the final vowel-letter is ا or و, the servile consonant is ی; as, جَايِ پَايِ اَسْبَ (jā-yī pā-yī ʿesb) *the place of the foot of the horse*; مُوِي رُوِي سَكْ (mū-yī rū-yī sèg) *the hair of the face of the dog*. If the final vowel-letter be ا ی, this letter is converted itself into the servile consonant required; so that no written addition is needed; thus, پَرِي چَاهِ بُرْجْ (pèrī-yī chāh-l būrj) *the fairy of the well of the tower*. Ignorance often writes a hêmzè over such final ی so converted into a consonant; but it really is not requisite. If, however, the final vowel be the letter ة, then the addition of a hêmzè is a necessity. Sometimes the èsèrè vowel-sign is figured under it, ء. Usage is divided as to the proper place where the servile hêmzè should be written. It is at times more correctly placed between the two words, on a line with the writing; as, بَرَاءَ فَلَکْ (bèrè-l fèlèk) *the lamb of the sphere* (i.e., *Aries*); and otherwise it is less correctly placed over the vowel ة; as, بَرَاءَ فَلَکْ.

Of two substantives in Persian construction, the first is often the metaphorical name of the thing literally expressed by the second, the pair really representing one idea under two images; as, سَائِقِ تَقْدِيرْ (sāīqī tāqdīr) *the drover, destiny*; عَنَانِ عَزِيمَتْ (ʿinānī ʿāzīmèt) *the reins (of) departure*.

Whether in Turkish or Persian construction, the same remark holds good of a pair of substantives, one of which is



the word **أَمْر** (əmr), or one of its synonyms, **مَادَّة** (māddè), **خُصُوص** (khūsūs), **كَيْفِيَّة** (kèyfilyyèt), &c., all of which signify our *circumstance*, and the like. They are used in written Turkish for precision. Thus: **رَأَى تَحْصِيلَ أَمْرِ إِنْسِلَاكِ** (rāh-l tāh-sīlīn əmr-l īnslākī) *the matter of the pursuit of the path of study*; **دُونَانْمَنِكَ كَلَمَسِي خُصُوص** (dōnānmānīñ gèlmēsī khūsūsū) *the question of the coming of the fleet*.

After a proper name of a person or thing, the word **نَام** (nām) *name*, is commonly employed; as, **أَحْمَدُ نَامُ ذَاتُ** (āhməd nām zāt) *the personage named Ahmed*; **قَرِيمُ نَامُ جَزِيرَةُ** (qīrīm nām jèzīrè) *the island (peninsula) named Crimea*.

The two words **حَضْرَت** (hāzrèt), **جَنَاب** (jènāb), which originally mean *presence* and *side*, are used before or after the names or titles of individuals held in honour, with a meaning varying from that of *His Divine Majesty* down to that of plain *Mr.* or *Mrs.*, &c. When they precede, they remain unchanged to the eye, but are in Persian construction; as, **حَضْرَتِ خُدا** (hāzrèt-l khūdā) *His Divine Majesty, God*; **حَضْرَتِ پَيَغَمْبَر** (— pèygāmbèr) *His Sanctity, the Prophet*; **جَنَابِ پَادِشَاه** (jènāb-ī pādīshāh) *His Majesty, the Sovereign*; **جَنَابِ مَدَارْتِمَاب** (— sādārèt-mā'āb) *His Highness, the Repair of the Vezirate (the Grand Vezir)*. When they follow, they are in Turkish construction, and generally take the possessive pronominal

suffix of the third person plural, but sometimes that of the third person singular; as, شَيْخُ الْإِسْلَامِ طَاهِرُ بَيْ حَضْرَتَلَرِي (shèykhü-'l-islām tāhîr bèy hâzrètlerî) *His Eminence the Lord High Chancellor, Tahir Bey*; بُرُوسَةُ مُفْتِيَسِي حَسَنُ أَفَنْدِي جَنَابِي (bûrûsâ mûftîsî hâsân efendî jênâbî) *His Honour the State Counsel of Brusa, Hasan Efendi*; سَفِيرُ پَاشَا حَضْرَتَلَرِي (sêfir pâshâ —) *His Excellency the Pasha Ambassador*; تَرْجَمَانُ بَيْ جَنَانَلَرِي (têrjâmân bèy —) *His Worship the Interpreter Bey*; &c., &c., &c. Generally, the word حَضْرَت before a single name indicates one of the prophets, saints, or patriarchs of old; as, حَضْرَتِ نُوحٍ (hâzrètî nûh) *the patriarch Noah*; مُوسَى — (— mûsâ) *the prophet Moses*; سُلَيْمَانُ — (— sûlêymân) *the prophet (king) Solomon*; مَرْيَمُ — (— meryem) *Saint Mary (the Virgin Mother)*; عِيسَى — (— 'isâ) *the Prophet Jesus*; مَسِيحُ — (— mèsîh) *the holy Anointed One (Christ)*; &c., &c., &c.

### SECTION III. *Syntax of the Adjective.*

Nearly everything requisite in a sketch has been said on this subject in the former Chapter (II.), Section II. If several adjectives qualify one substantive, they follow one another simply in Turkish construction, and are all connected vocally in the Persian construction; as, كُوزَلْ اَدَبْلُو مَحْجُوبُ چُوچُقْ (gyûzèl,

édèblî, mâhjûb chôjûq) *a pretty, well-behaved, modest child* ;  
 جَايِ بِيْهْسْتِ نَمَائِ فَرْحِ فَزَا (jā-yî blîsht-nâmā-yî fêrâh-fêzā) *a*  
*paradise-like, joy-giving place.*

One adjective may qualify several substantives in a sentence ;  
 as, اُمَمٌ وَاَجْيَالٌ سَائِرَةٌ (ûmêm û êjyālî sâîrê) *the other peoples and*  
*nations.*

An Arabic or Persian adjective is never placed *after* a  
 Turkish or foreign substantive ; and whenever either is placed  
*before* one of these, it remains, like a Turkish adjective, un-  
 changed as to gender or number ; as, عَظِيمٌ طَاغٌ ('âzîm dâgh)  
*a great mountain* ; عَظِيمٌ پَادِشَاهُ ('âzîm pādîshāh) *a great monarch*,  
 عَظِيمٌ دَوْلَتٌ ('âzîm dêvlèt) *a great state.*

Some adjectives take a substantive as a complement to  
 restrict their application. In Turkish construction, this com-  
 plement precedes, with or without a preposition ; as, صُوطُولُو  
 (sû dôlû) *full (of) water*, صُوَايِلَهْ طُولُو (sû îlâ dôlû) *filled with*  
*water.* In Persian construction it follows ; as, لَاقِي بَيَانٌ (lâyîq-  
 î bêyân) *worthy of exposition* ; مُوَافِقِ طَبْعٍ (mûwâfîq-î tâb) *con-*  
*formable with nature.*

The Turkish adjective كَبِي (glbl) *like*, follows substantives,  
 the personal pronoun of the 3rd pers. plur., the demonstratives  
 plural, the interrogatives singular and plural, and the compound  
 relatives, when its complements, without any change occurring  
 in them ; as, صُوكِي (sû glbl) *like water* ; اَنْلَرِ كَبِي (ânler

gıbl) *like them*; بُونْلَرَكِی (bunlâr gıbl) *like these*; کِیْمَ کِی (kîm gıbl) *like whom?* نَلَرَكِی (nêlêr gıbl) *like what things?* بَابَامْکِی (bâbâmlnkl gıbl) *like the one belonging to my father*; بَنْدَهْکِی (bêndêkl gıbl) *like the one I have*. All other pronouns are put in the genitive, when complements to this word; as, بِنِمَ کِی (bênîm gıbl) *like me*; اَنَکِ کِی (ânîñ gıbl) *like him, her, it*; سِرْکِ کِی (sîzlñ gıbl) *like you*; بُونُکِ کِی (bunñ gıbl) *like this*; &c.

#### SECTION IV. *Syntax of the Numerals.*

The Turkish and Persian cardinals always precede their substantive, and this is usually left in the singular, whatever the number; as, اِیْکِ چِفتْ (ikl chıft) *two pairs*; دُو جِهَانْ (dû jihân) *the two worlds* (present and future). But the Arabic cardinal follows, the construction is made Persian, and the substantive is made plural; as, قَوَايِ خَمْسَهْ (quvâyl khâmsê) *the five senses*; جِهَاتِ سِتّهْ (jihâtl sittê) *the six directions* (in space), *six sides* (of a solid).

The Turkish and Persian numerals precede the adjectives of the same substantive; as do also the Arabic (though after the substantive); thus, اِیْکِ سِیَاهْ کِچِی (ikl sıyâh kêchl) *two black goats*; هَفْتِ اَقْلِیمْ مَعْمُورَهْ (heft lqlîm-l mâ'mûrê) *the seven climates*

of the habitable earth ; قَوَايِ خَمْسَةٍ ظَاهِرَةٍ (qūvāyī khāmsê-i zā-hirê) *the five external senses.*

But if, instead of an adjective, a descriptive phrase should qualify the substantive, the Turkish numeral comes between the two; as, اَوَطْدُنْكَ بُوَيْنْدَه بِرَايِبْ (òdānīñ bōyūndā blr īp) *a string of the length of the room*; هَرِّبَرِي بَشْ كَيْسَه أَقْجَه اِيْدَرْ يَدِي الْمَاسْ (hêr blrī bêsh kēysê âqchâ êdêr yêdī êlmâs) *seven diamonds, each of the value of five purses of money.*

A Turkish cardinal number can be placed after a substantive in the genitive, singular or plural. It does not then define the number of that substantive, but of a definite portion of what this represents; as, آدَمِڭ بَرِي (âdāmīñ blrī) *one of mankind, a man*; آدَمَلَرِڭ بَرِي (âdāmlerīñ blrī) *one of the men*; اَوَطْدُنْكَ اِيَكِيْسِي (òdānīñ īkisi) *two rooms*, اَوَطْدَلَرِڭ اِيَكِيْسِي (òdālārīñ īkisi) *two of the rooms.*

Very often, between the Turkish cardinal number and its substantive, another substantive is introduced, with the sense of *individual* or *individuals*, as in our phrases "*ten head of cattle*," "*six sail of ships*," &c. This substantive varies in Turkish according to the nature of the things defined by the numeral. For *men* it is نَفَرْ (nêfer) *individual*; for *beasts* it is رَأْسْ (rê's) *head*; for *bulbs* it is بَاشْ (bâsh) *head*; for *ships* it is قِطْعَه (qit'â) *piece*; for *cannons, ships, and villages*, it is پَارَهْ (pārê,

*vulg.* pârâ) piece; for things usually counted it is عَدَدٌ ('addad) number; for things not usually counted it is دَانَةٌ (dānê, *vulg.* tādā) berry; for swords it is قَبْضَةٌ (qābzā) hilt; for elephants, أَوْنُ رَأْسٍ قُوَيْوُنَ (zēnjir) chain. Thus: بَشٌّ نَفَرٌ آدَمَ five men; اِيكِي بَاشٌ صُوعَانَ ten sheep; يِكْرِمِي قَطْعَه سَفِينَه twenty ships; اِيكِي بَارَه تَكَنَه twenty vessels; اُونُ بَارَه طُوبُ ten cannon (pieces of artillery); اَلِّي بَارَه كُوي fifty villages; اَيُّوزُ عَدَدُ يَوْمُورَطَه a hundred eggs; اِيكِي دَانَه اِنْبَجُو two pearls; اَوْچُ قَبْضَه قِلِج three swords; بَر زَنْجِيرُ فِيل one elephant.

The Turkish ordinals precede their substantives; as, *birinci gece* (birlinçl geyjè) *the first night*; *altmışıncı taburcu alay* (âltmish dâğuzdınç âlâý) *the sixty-ninth regiment*.

The Arabic ordinals follow; as, **بَابِ خَامِسُ** (bābī khāms) *chapter the fifth*.

The Persian ordinals generally precede, but sometimes follow.

The Turkish distributive numerals are used to express the rates of collection as well as of distribution ; as, بَشَرٌ پَارَهُ وَیَرْدِلِرُ (beshêr pâra vèrdilêr) *they contributed five paras each* ; اَنَلَرَهٗ بَشَرٌ (ânâlarâ beshêr pâra vèrildi) *to them five paras each were distributed.*

For emphasis sake, the simpler distributives are often



repeated ; but they are then generally used as substantives ; as,  
 بِرَّرَ بِرَّرَ تَوَلَّدِمَ (blrèr blrèr tòpládîm) *I collected (them) one by one ;*  
 اِكْشِرْ اِكْشِرْ اَلْنِّزْ (iklshèr iklshèr âlñîz) *take ye (them) two*  
*a piece each (of you), or, take you (or thou, them) two together*  
*each time.*

#### SECTION V. *Syntax of Pronouns.*

The demonstrative pronoun, when an adjective, precedes all other qualifications of its substantive ; as, بَوَّاحْ بَيُّوكْ كَوَزَلْ (bû ûch blyûk gyûzèl gèllnlk qîz) *these three tall, handsome, nubile girls.*

The suffixed possessive pronoun is not, in literary style, necessarily attached to its substantive, but to the last word of the combination of substantive, adjective, &c., to which it belongs. Thus, مَرَحُومْ پَدَرِمَ (mèrhûm pèdèrlm) *my late father*, may be rendered in the Persian form, پَدَرِ مَرَحُومَ (pèdèr-i mèrhûmûm) ; so also, وَجْهَ خَاطِرْ خَوَاهِمِزْ (vèjh-i khâtîr-kh'âhîmîz) *the manner desiderated in mind by us (i. e., by me) ;* اَقْطَارِ شَرْقِيَهْ سَرْعَسْكَرِ (âqtâr-i shârqîyyè sèr-'âskèr-i zâfèr-rèhbèrl) *the victorious commander-in-chief of the eastern districts ;* بَوَّابْغَتْ هَرَّ (bû bâghîñ hèr bir jâ-yî jân-fèzâ-yî blhlsht-lntlmâsl) *each soul-enrapturing, paradise-prognosticating spot of this garden.*

The corroborative of the suffixed possessive pronoun of

Turkish construction precedes the whole combination to which the possessive is suffixed ; and this corroborative is always in the genitive, whether it be a substantive or a pronoun ; as, *بَنِم مَرَحُومَ پَدَرِیْمَ* (bēnlm mērhūm pēdērlm) *my late father* ; *اُوْلَدِنِکْ بَیُوْکْ قَیُوْسی* (ôdānlñ blyûk qâpûsû) *the great door of the room*.

One possessive suffix may qualify several substantives ; as, *اَلْ وَاَصْحَابُ وَاَعْتَرَتْ وَاَحْبَابِی* (āl û âs-hāb û 'itrēt û âhbābî) *his family, companions, posterity, and friends*.

#### SECTION VI. *Syntax of the Verb.*

Verbs of the first and second person agree with their nominatives in number and person ; as, *بَن کُوْرْدُدُمُ* (bēn gyûrdûm) *I saw, have seen (him, her, it, &c.)* ; *سِز کُوْرْدُدُنُزُ* (sîz gyûrdûnûz) *you saw, have seen (me, us, them, &c.)*.

A verb of the third person must also agree with its subject, if understood ; as, *کُوْرْدُیَ* (gyûrdû) *he, she, it saw, has seen (it, &c.)* ; *کُوْرْدُیُلَرُ* (gyûrdûlēr) *they saw, have seen (it, &c.)*.

When the subject is *expressed* of a verb of the third person, the verb does not always agree with it in number. A singular subject sometimes has its verb in the plural, out of respect or politeness ; a plural subject often has its verb in the singular, so as to avoid the cacophony of repetition. Thus : *بَابَاْمْ کِتْدِیْلَرُ*

(hābām gltdllr) *my father went, has gone, is gone* ; اَوْشَاقْلَرِي كَلْدِي (ùshāqlèrl gāldl) *his or their servants came, or have come, are come.*

So a verb with several subjects expressed, when all of the third person, singular or plural, may be in the singular ; as, اَلْوَفِ رِضْوَانُ وَصُنُوفِ غُفْرَانُ شَايَانُ دِرْ (ālūf-i rīzvān ū sūnūf-i gūfrān shāyān dlr) *thousands of prayers for God's acceptance, and all kinds of wishes for God's mercy (on him, &c.) is (are) fitting.*

If one of them be of the second person, singular or plural, and the other or others of the third person, the verb must be of the second person plural ; as, سَنَ وَبَدِرْمَ وَقُوكْشِيكَزْ بَرَابَرْ كَتْدِيكَزْ (sān vē pēdèrm vē qōñshūñūz bērabēr gltdlñlz) *thou and my father, with your neighbour, went together.*

And if one be of the first person, even singular, whether the others be of the second or third, singular or plural, the verb must be in the first person plural ; as, بَنَ وَسَنَ وَقَرِنْدَاشِكَ كُورْدُكْ (bēn, vē sān, vē qārndāshīñ, gyūrdūk) *I, and thou, and thy brother, saw (him, &c.).*

In conversation, دِرْ and its plural دِرْلَر are generally omitted at the end of a phrase, affirmative, negative, or interrogative ; as, كَيْفِكْزِ اِيوَمِي (kēyfīñlz lyl ml) *is your health good ?* اِيو (lyl) *it is good* ; اِيو دِكْلِي (lyl dlyll) *it is not good.*

But, in repeating the affirmative or negative words of another, دِرْ must be introduced ; as, بُوَيْلَه دِرْ دِيُو تَصْدِيْقْ اَيْلَدِي (būyīlē dīr dīyū tadvīq' āyldī)

(bâylê dlr, dèyâ, tâsdiq èylêdl) *he confirmed, saying, "It is so."*

In relating the words of another, no alteration is permitted in number, person, or tense of the verb; as, ديدى كورم (gèlirim, dldl) *he said, "I will come"* (not as in English, "*he said he would come*").

When the object of a transitive verb is definite, it is put in the accusative; as, آتى آلدِم (âti âldim) *I bought, have bought (or taken) the horse*. But, if the object be indefinite, it remains in the nominative; as, آت آلدِم (ât âldim) *I bought a horse or horses*.

Intransitive, like transitive, verbs, govern their indirect objects by means of different prepositions, *i.e.*, the substantives or pronouns are put into different cases according to the verb. Thus : أولومدن قورقماق (ûlûmdân qôrqmâq) *to be afraid of death*; أولومدن قاچمق (ûlûmdân qâchmâq) *to run away from death*; پارâyê bâqmâq (pârâyâ bâqmâq) *to look at money (i.e., to take money into account or consideration)*; صوده يوزمك (sûdâ yûzmek) *to swim in the water*; دكزه كيرمك (dènzè girmek) *to go into the sea (i.e., to bathe in the sea)*; قىلجى ايله اوزمق (qillj ilâ wûrmâq) *to strike with a (or the) sword*; خاطر ايجون يابمق (khâtir ichin yâpmâq) *to do (a thing) out of regard (for some one)*; حيوانه بتمك (hâywânâ blnmek) *to mount on a beast (horse)*;

كَمِيَ بَ بِنَمَكْ (gèmyè blnmèk) *to mount (go) on board ship* ;  
 آيَاغَه قَالْقَمَقْ (áyaghâ qâlqmâq) *to rise to one's feet (i. e., to rise, get up, stand up).*

Nouns of time and place are often used adverbially (as also is the case in English) without prepositions after verbs ; as, يَارِينَ كُلَّ (yārīn gâl) *come to-morrow* ; أَشَاغِي إِينْ (âshâghī īn, *vulg.* èn) *descend, come or go down* ; يُوْقَارِي جِيْقِي (yûqârī chīq) *ascend, mount* ; i. e., *come or go up*. Still, on occasions, prepositions are used with them ; as, صَاغَه صَابْ (sâghâ sâp) *deviate (turn) to the right* ; صَوْلَه بَاقِي (sòlâ bâq) *look to the left* ; كِيرُو كَيْتْ (gīrû, *vulg.* gērī gīt) *go back* ; كِيرُوْدَنْ كُلَّ (gērīdân gâl) *come from the rear, from behind*.

A transitive verb has sometimes two direct objects, one definite, the other indefinite ; as, آفِي مُشِيرْ إِيْتَدِيلَرْ (âfī mûshīr ètdīlēr) *they made him a mushīr (duke, or field-marshal).*

An Ottoman compound verb, active or passive, often takes its direct or indirect object into the body of the verb, as the Persian complement of its nominal factor ; as, بُوْدَقِيَقْدِيَه تَحْصِيلِ وَفُوفِ اَيْلِدِي (bûdâqīqāyâ tâhsīlī vwûqûf èylèdī) *he acquired cognizance of (about) this subtle point* ; صَرْفِ مُزَجَاتِ بِضَاعَه قِيلِنْدِي (sârf-ī mûzjât-ī bīzâ'â qīlīndī) *expenditure of the modicum of capital was made (i. e., the modicum of capital was spent).*

SECTION VII. *Syntax of the Participle.*

In conversation, the substantive qualified by a particle, active or passive, is sometimes understood, and the participle is used as a substantive; as, *كَلَّنَه وَهَرُ* (gèlânè vèr) *give (thou it) to him (or her) who comes*; *كِيْدِيْكُمْ بَاقَمَه* (gldlylma bâqma) *look not at that which I wear*; *يَاْهَجِيْ صُورَمَه* (yâpâjâghîmî sôrmâ) *ask not what I shall do.*

The active participle present of *أَوَّلَمَقَ*, i. e. *أَوَّلَانُ*, is often omitted after Arabic participles, active or passive; as, *رَبْعَ مُسْكُونَدَه وَاقِعَ مَمَالِكَ وَبُلْدَانُ* (rûb'î mèskyündâ vwâq' mêmâllk ù bûldân) *the countries and towns situated in the inhabited quarter (of the globe)*; *بُوكِتَابَدَه مَذْكُورُ فُنُونُ وَمَعَارِفُ* (bû kitâbdâ mèz-kyûr fûnûn ù mâ'ârlf) *the sciences and matters of knowledge mentioned in this book.*

Active participles govern all their objects in the same way as the verbs from which they derive; so also do the passive participles, excepting only the object they each qualify as an adjective; as, *قَبُوْ آجَانُ* (qâpu âchân) *he who opens a door*; *قَبُوْیِ آجَانُ* (qâpu'yî âchân) *he who (that which) opens the door*; *قَبُوْ اِلَهْ اَجْدِيْغِمُ قَبُوْ* (èlm ilè âchdîghîm qâpu) *the door that I opened with my hand*; *بَدْرِمْكَ بُوْیِ قَبُوْلُ اِيْدَهْمِيْهْجِيْ سَبَبُ* (pèderîmlñ bûnù qâbûl idèmèyèjèyî sèbèb) *the reason for which my father will not be able to accept this.*



The Persian and Arabic participles are constructed, generally, with their objects, in the same manner as if the participles were substantives; as, خَالِقِ هَرْدُو جِهَانْ (khālīq-i hēr dū jilhān), هَرْدُو جِهَانِكَ خَالِقِ (hēr dū jilhānīñ khālīqī) *the Creator of both worlds*; مَخْلُوقِ يَدِ قُدْرَتِي (mākhilūq-i yēd-i qudrēti), يَدِ قُدْرَتَلَرِنِكَ مَخْلُوقِ (yēd-i qudrētlērīñ mākhilūqū) *the creature of the hand of His almighty power*; اَفَرِينْدَهْ اَيْنُ وَاَنْ (āferīnēdē īn u ān) *the Creator of this and that (all things)*; رَسِيدَهْ كُنْكَرَهْ چَرُخِ اَثِيرِ (rēsīdē kyūngyūrē-i chārkh-i ēsīr) *which has reached the battlement of the ethereal sphere*.

But sometimes Arabic active participles of transitive verbs govern their direct objects as do their verbs; thus, كَيْفِيَّتِ مَذْكَوْرَهْ يِ مُبِينِ (kēfyīyēt-i mēzkyūrē-i mābīn) *which explains the said circumstance*.

#### SECTION VIII. *Syntax of the Verbal Nouns and Infinitive.*

Turkish verbal nouns are constructed with their subjects, when substantives, as any two substantives; thus, اَحْمَدِ كَلَمَسِي (āhmēdlī gālmēsī) *the coming of Ahmed, Ahmed's coming*; اَحْمَدِ كَلْدِي (āhmēdlī gāldīyī) *Ahmed's (past action of) having come*; اَحْمَدِ كَلَهْ جَكِي (āhmēdlī gēlējēyī) *Ahmed's (future action of) coming*.

When the subject is a pronoun, it is put in the genitive still,

and the Turkish verbal noun takes the possessive suffix of the subject's number and person ; as, **بَنِم كَلَمَم** (bènlm gâlmèm) *my coming* ; **سَنِكَ كَدِيكُ** (sânln gâldlylñ) *thy having come* ; **أَنَلِرُكْ** (ânlerlñ gâljèklèrl) *their future coming*.

Turkish verbal nouns and infinitives are constructed with their objects, direct or indirect, exactly as their verbs ; thus, **أَنِ كُورَمَم** (ânl gyûrmèm) *my seeing him (her, it)* ; **إَزْمِيرَه كَلَجَكُ** (îzmîrè gâljèylñ) *thy future coming to Smyrna* ; **بَدَرِنَه أَحْمَدُكْ** (pèderlnâ âhmèdlñ dñn mèktüb yâzdıghı) *Ahmed's having written a letter to his father yesterday*.

Arabic verbal nouns are constructed with their agents sometimes in the Turkish, sometimes in the Arabic, and sometimes in the Persian manner ; as, **وَرُودُ** (vûrûdum) *my arrival* ; **تَحْصِيلُ** (tâhsîlñ) *thy study* ; **تَحْرِيرُ** (tâhrîrl) *his writing* ; **صُنْعُ اللَّهِ** (sûn'ü 'llâh) *the act of God* ; **إِدَارَةُ بَرْكَارِ أَفْكَارٍ** (îdârè-i pèrgyâr-l êfkyâr) *a revolving of the compasses of the thoughts*.

Arabic verbal nouns are constructed with their objects in the same manner as the compound verbs formed of them ; as, **مَقْدُورِي صَرْفٍ** (mâqdûrl sârf) *an employing one's utmost* ; **فَنِّ جَغْرَافِيَّاتِي تَحْصِيلَه مَدَارٌ** (fânn-l jâgrâfîyâyı tâhsîlâ médâr) *a help to an acquiring the science of geography*. But they may also be constructed with them as two simple substantives, either in

the Turkish or Persian manner; as, *صَرَفَ مَقْدُورٌ* or *صَرَفِي*; and again, *فَنَّ جَعْرَافِيَاةَ* or *تَحْصِيلَ فَنِّ جَعْرَافِيَاةَ تَحْصِيلَهُ*; &c.

In all cases excepting their construction with their subjects or objects, the Turkish verbal nouns and infinitives are constructed in sentences exactly like any other substantives; as, *أُولَمَكْ بُودْنَدَن اُولَى دِرْ* (ûlmek bûndân evlâ dîr) *to die is better than this*; *قُورْتُلْمَاغْهَا چَالِشْدَى* (qurtulmâghâ châlîshdî) *he laboured at escaping*; *يَاقَمَقْ اِيچُون تَرْتِيبْ اِيْتَدِمْ* (yâqmaq iehin tertiib êtdim) *I arranged, have arranged (it) for burning*; *گَالْمَسْلِ لَازِمِ دِيْلِلْ* (gâlmèsl lâzîm dîylil) *his coming (is) not necessary*; *كِيْدَه بِيْلَه جِكِمَه* (gîdè-bilèjèylmè shûb-hèm vâr) *my doubt exists, i. e., I have a doubt as to my being able to go.*

#### SECTION IX. *Syntax of the Gerunds.*

The gerunds are not much used in conversation; there the discourse is broken up into as many sentences as may be needed, each with its personal verb; as, *كِتْدِمْ كُورْدِمْ كَلْدِمْ خَبَرْ وِرْدِمْ* (gîtdim, gyûrdûm, gâldim, khâbèr vèrdim) *I went; I saw; I came; I gave information.*

But, in the literary style, one long phrase, ending with one personal verb, will contain a number of clauses, each ending with a gerund (which thus acts to the ear, as well as to the eye, like our commas and semicolons); as, *كِدُوبْ كُورَه رَكْ كَلْدَكْدَه*

خَبَرَ وَيَرْدِمَ (gıldıp, gyûrerek, gâldıkdê, khâbêr vêrdim), *I, going and seeing, on coming back, reported.*

When compound verbs are used, the auxiliary gerunds may be omitted once or twice in a long sentence ; as, يَرْمُضَعَهُ وَرُودُ (blr mēvzî'â vâ'rūd, vè ândâ blr mîqdâr qû'ūd êddp, ....) ... *arriving at a certain place, and sitting down there awhile, ....* In this case, however, a conjunction requires to be introduced in lieu of the gerund omitted ; as is seen in the example given.

The subjects, and direct or indirect objects, of the gerunds are constructed as with their verbs. But, as the gerunds cannot indicate the person and number of their subjects, the appropriate personal pronoun must be expressed before them, when the subject is not a substantive ; as, أَدَمَ كِتَابَ أَوْقُوبُوبَ (âdâm kltâb ôqûyûb) *man, reading a book (or books), ..... ;* فَرَمَانِمُ سِرَّةَ وَاصِلَ أُولِيحَقِّ (fêrmânîm slzê vwâsîl ôlijâq) *at what time my command shall attain unto you, ..... ;* بَنَ شَوْ أَدَمِي كُورَةَ رَكَ (bên, shû âdâmî gyûrêrêk) *I, seeing that man, ..... ; &c.*

#### SECTION X. *Syntax of the Adverb.*

The adverb precedes the verb or adjective qualified by it ; as, صَبَاحَلَيْنَ كَلْدِي (sâbâhlêyîn gâldî) *he came in the morning ;* جُوقُ كُوزَلْ (chôq gyûzêl) *very pretty.*

The negative دِكْل (dyl) *not*, precedes the verb substantive, expressed or understood, but follows the substantive or adjective which it negatives; as, كَنْج دِكْلِم (g'enj dylilm) *I am not young*; عَقْلِسْز دِكْلِسْ (âqls'z dyl'lsn) *thou art not unintelligent*; اَدَم دِكْل دِر (âdâ'm dyl' dlr) *he or it is not a man*; &c.

The adverbial suffixes دَك (dêk), دَكِين (dêyin), follow a noun of time, place, or condition, in the dative; as, صَبَاحَه دَكِين (sâbâhâ dêyin) *until morning*; لُونْدَرَه يَدَك (lôndurâ'yâdêk) *as far as London*; اُولُمَدَك (ûlûmêdêk) *until death*. They follow the third gerund also, put in this same dative case, and thus form a verbal limit of time; as, كَلِجَه يَدَك (g'el'njâyêdêk) *until (I, thou, &c.) come, came*. The agent must be named or understood; as, بِن كِيدِنجَه يَدَك (b'ên g'id'njâyêdêk) *until I go (or went)*; مَكْتُوبُم اَوْرَايَه وَارِنجَه يَدَك (mêktûbûm ôrâyâ var'njâyâdêk) *until my letter reach (or reached) there*. The tense of this gerund is decided by the context, in like manner as its agent and object.

The adverb كُورَه (gyûrê) *according*, also follows a dative; as, عَقْلِمَه كُورَه (âqlîmâ gyûrê) *according to my judgment*; بَا كُورَه (bâ'â gyûrê) *according to me*; &c.

The adverbs يَكَا (yâ'â), طُولَايِي (dôlâyî), اَوْتُورِي (ûtûrî) *relatively*, follow substantives or infinitives in the ablative; as, كِتَابْدَن طُولَايِي (k'itâbdân dôlâyî) *relatively to (about) a (or the)*

book ; كِتْمَكْدَنْ اَوْتُورُی (gltmekdân ôtûrû) *relatively to* (about, concerning) *going*.

Although it is not grammatically erroneous, in answering a question, to use the affirmative adverb اَوْتُ (èvèt) or بَلَى (bèl) *yes*, or the negative يَوْقُ (yòq) or خَيْرٌ (khâyr) *no*, when appropriate, it is unidiomatic to do so. The more general custom, whether one of those adverbs be used or not, is to repeat the word or words of the question on which the interrogation turns, with such grammatical modifications as may be necessary. Thus, turning back to the five questions instanced in Chap. II., sect. 21 (p. 151-2), the respective answers may be : 1, اَوْتُ بَنْ (èvèt, bèn) *yes, I* (am to ride); 2, يَوْقُ اَوْلِيَرَكُونُ (yòq, òlblr gyân) *no, the day after* ; &c.

#### SECTION XI. *Syntax of the Preposition.*

The Turkish preposition always follows the word it governs, noun, pronoun, or verbal derivative, as is seen in Chap. II., sections 1 (p. 51), 4 (p. 82), 5 (p. 88), 6 (p. 89), 7 (p. 90), and in Chap. III., section 8 (p. 179) ; but the Arabic and Persian prepositions always precede ; as, عَلَى التَّحْقِيقِ ('âlè 't-tâhqlq) *in truth* ; بِرَقَرَارٍ (bèr qârâr) *in permanence* (without change) ; عَلَيَّحْدَه ('âlâ hldè) *singly* ; فِي الْوَاقِعِ (fî 'l-wâqî') *in fact* ; عَلَى كُلِّ التَّقْدِيرَيْنِ ('âlâ klâ 'l-tqddirên) *in any case* ;



kêlâ 't-tâqdîrêyn) upon either supposition; أَزْ سَرِّ نَوَّ (êz sér-l nêv) from a new beginning (over again, again).

A preposition may govern two or more substantives in a sentence; as, آلٌ وَأَصْحَابٌ وَعِثْرَتٌ وَأَحْبَابُهُ to his family, companions, posterity, and friends.

But, as the Arabic and Persian preposition precedes the adjectives that qualify, as well as the substantives qualified, so the Turkish preposition is placed after all these; consequently, in Persian construction, and when the substantive is followed by the possessive suffixes, the Turkish preposition is separated from the substantive it governs, sometimes by a considerable distance; as, بِأَبَايِ (bâbâ-m ilê) with my father; بُو مُحِبِّ صَادِقَدَه (bû muhîbb-î sâdlq-dâ) in this faithful friend; قَالِيُونِ كُرَهْ نُمُونِ هُمَايُونُكْ بَاشِي (qâlliyün-î kyüh-nûmûn-î hûmâyûnûn bâshî) the head of the mountain-like imperial galley.

## SECTION XII. Syntax of the Conjunction.

All conjunctions, except the enclitic دَهْ (dê, dâ), or دَخِي (dâkhî), too, also, head the phrase they belong to.

The enclitic conversational دَهْ, or literary دَخِي, is placed after the word of a phrase to which special attention is directed; thus: اِسْتَانْبُولْدَنْ دَخِي طُوبُ كَلْدِي (İstânbôldân dâkhî, or İstânbôldân dâ tûp gâldî) cannon came from Constantinople also; اِسْتَانْبُولْدَنْ طُوبُ

دَخِي كَدِّي (İstâuböldân tûp dâkhî gâldî) *cannon, too, came from Constantinople.*

This enclitic is repeated after each member of a phrase linked together by its use; as, بَنَدَه كِيدِرِم سَنَدَه (bên-dâ gèdèrlîm; sâ-n-dâ) *I, too, will go, as also thou*; بَنَدَه سَنَدَه اُولَدَه اُوجُمَز كِيدِرَز (bên-dâ, sâ-n-dâ, ô-dâ, ûchûmûz gîdèrlîz) *I, thou, and he too, will all three go.*

It is often placed after a verb in the conditional, its sense being then, in English, rendered by *even*; as, كَلَسَه دَه (gâlsê-dê) *even should he come*; كَلَمِش اَيَسَه دَه (gâlmîsh isê-dê) *even though he be come*; كَلَسِيَدِي دَه (gâlsâydi-dâ) *had he even come*; كَلَه جَك اُولَسَه دَه (gâlêjêk ôlsâ-dâ) *even should he be about to come (even should he think of coming, or resolve to come).*

After other verbs than conditionals, it is enclitic with each that enters a phrase, and answers to our *both*, followed by *and* or *also*; as, كَلِيرِمَدَه كُورُومَدَه (gèlîrîm-dâ, gyûrûrûm-dâ) *I will both come, and see also*; (—, —, كَلِيرِمَدَه كُورُومَدَه بَكُورُور اَيَسَه م اُولُومَدَه (bêyânîr-isê-m, âlîrîm-dâ) *I will come, and I will see, and if I admire, will also buy.*

The conjunctions هَا, كَرَكَ, اِسْتَر (hâ, kerk, îstêr) in the sense of *whether ...*, or *whether*, اَكِر (êyêr) *if*, with كَرَجَه (gêr-chî, vulg. gêrchê) or اَكِرَجَه (êyêr-chî, vulg. êgêrchê) *although*, put the verb or verbs of their phrase in the conditional; as, هَا كَلَسَه هَا كَلَمَسَه (hâ gâlsê,

há gálmāsā) *whether he come, or (whether he come) not*; أَكْرَكَسَه (èyèr gálsā) *if he come*; أَكْرَجِهْ كَلِمَشْ إِيْسَهْ (ègèrchl gálmish lsā-dā) *although he be even come (even though he be come)*.

When the copulative و joins one verb or phrase to another, it is pronounced vé, in conformity (to a certain degree) with its original Arabic pronunciation; but when, in Persian construction, it unites two nouns, substantive or adjective, it takes the vowel-sound of ū or ū, and joins on, in pronunciation, as though in a syllable, with the consonant preceding it; as, دَوْلَتْ وَ اِقْبَالَ (gáldl vé gyūrdā) *he came, and he saw*; دَوْلَتْ وَ اِقْبَالَ (dèvlèt ū lqbāl) *fortune and prosperity*; قَوِي وَ تَنْدُرُسْت (qāvi-yū tèn-dūrúst) *strong and healthy*.

The Persian conjunction كِه (kl) *that*, always connects two members of a phrase, and should never be supposed to be a relative pronoun in Turkish (as it really is in Persian, as well as a conjunction); as, مَعْلُومٌ اُولَهْ كِه (mā'lūm ōlā kl) *be it known that ....* Sometimes the clause that follows shows the cause or reason of that which precedes; the conjunction may then be rendered by *for* or *because*; as, نِيَاَزْمَنْدِ اُولَهْلِمِ وَ نَالَهْ كُنَانْ كِه جَنَسِ (nīyāzmēnd ōlālm, vé nālè-kyūnān, kl jlns-l māgfèrètè sīm-l ēshk ōldū nūqūd) *let us be instant in supplications, and assiduous in moans, for the silver of (man's) tears has been made the coins payable for the wares of (God's) mercy.* (The inversion نَقُودٌ اُولْدِيْ for اُولْدِيْ نَقُودٌ is poetical.)

After a verb signifying *to say* (which also may mean, *to say to one's self, to think*), or *to ask*, the conjunction **كِه** introduces, what is, was, or will be said or thought; but the question must be in the mood, tense, number, and person, in the very words, used by the speaker or thinker; as, **دَيُورْ كِه يَارِينْ كُورِم** (dlyør kl, yārın gèlirim) *he says, I will come to-morrow*; **سُورْدُ كِه بُونَه دِرْ** (sòrdù kl, bù nè dir) *he asked, What is this?* We see, then, that **كِه**, so used, is the equivalent of our sign of quotation, the *inverted commas*. We cannot alter the phrase as is our custom, and say, *he says he will come, or he asked what that was.*

Occasionally, in a certain style, this **كِه** is omitted; as, **دِيدِي آيْ شَهْرِيَارْ** (didl: èy shèhrlyār) *he exclaimed, "O monarch."*

But the method more generally used, especially in conversation, and which is the true Turkish mode, is to quote first what was said, asked, or thought, and then immediately to bring in the verb *to say*, &c., in its proper tense, number, and person; as, **كُورُورْ دَيُورْلَرْ** (gèlrlrz dlyòrlèr) *they say, We will come*; i. e., *they say they will come*; **كُورْمَدِم دِيدِي** (gyûrmâdlm didl) *he said, I did not see* (him, her, it, them, you, &c.); i. e., *he said he did not see*. In this case, if the verb used be any other than **دِيمَكْ**, the Turkish conjunction **دِيُو** (dlyù, *vulg. dèyè*), which really is the first or fifth gerund, modified by usage, of **دِيمَكْ**, viz., **دِيُوبْ** or **دِيَهْ**, is introduced before the verb used, and after the quotation; it is the equivalent of our *saying*; as, **كَيْفِكْز اِيُومِي دِيُو**

سَوَّالِ اِيتِدِم (kèyflîñlz lyl-mî, dlyù, sū'āl ètdîm) *I asked (of him or her), saying, Is your health good? i. e., I asked how he was;*  
 بِلْمَيُورِلَز دِيُو اِنْكَارِ اَيْدِيُورِلَز (bèlméyòrlz, dlyù, inkyār idiyòrlèr) *they deny, saying, We know not; i. e., they deny, and say they know not;*  
 كَلَمْزَسِكْز دِيُو خُولِيَا اِيتِدِم (gálmāzslîñlz, dlyù, khūlyā ètdîm) *I formed an idea, saying (to myself), You will not come; i. e., I imagined that you would not come;*  
 نَه دِيُو كَلْدِيَكْز (nè dlyù, gáldlîñlz) *saying what (to thyself), art thou come? i. e., what are you come for?*

The conjunction **كِه** sometimes, as in Persian, serves to connect an incidental qualifying phrase to an antecedent noun, as though it were a relative pronoun; but in such case it never undergoes declension or takes a preposition, the following phrase being complete in all its parts; as, **حَمْدُ وِ سِپَاسِ اَوَّلِ** **خُدَاوَنَدِي عَلَّتَه سَزَا دِر كِه وُجُودِ اَنَهَارُ وَقُعُورِ بَحَارِ يَكْقَطْرَه قُدْرَتِ نَامَتْنَاهِيلِرِي دِر** (hâmd û sipâs ôl khudâvend-i bî-illètè sèzâ dîr, kî, vûjūd-i ênhâr û qû'ûr-i blhâr yèk-qâtrè-l qûdrèt-i nā-mûtnāhîlêrî dîr) *glory and lauds are worthy of that uncaused Lord God, of whose infinite power the existence of rivers and the depths of oceans are but a single drop.*

The foregoing example shows that it is often difficult or impossible to distinguish whether the phrase that follows **كِه** is a qualificative, or the exposition of a reason. We might

take it in this latter sense, and translate: *for, the existence of rivers, &c., are but one drop, &c.*

But, in ethical works and the like, generally composed by members of the 'ulēmā class (Doctors of Canon Law) on a Persian or Arabic model, the clause that follows *که* is generally qualificative, and the style is anti-Turkish. Thus: *هَر کَسِ که دَسِتِ هِمَتِ اِیْلَه حَبْلِ مَتِنِ عَقْلَه مُتَشَبِّتِ اُولَه* (hēr kēs kl dēst-i hlmmēt llā hābl-i mētīn-i 'āqlā mūtēshēbbis olā, .....); *every one who shall take hold of the firm cable of reason with the hand of endeavour, .....; بُو جَانَوْر لَر که نَظَرِ عِبْرَتْلَه مَنظُور دِر* (bū jānōvrlēr kl nāzār-i 'ībrēt-lā mānzūr dūr, .....); *these animals which are looked upon with a regard for instruction, .....*

The conjunctions *تَا که* (tā kl) *in order that*, *شَايَد که* (shāyēd kl) *perhaps, lest*, *مَادَامِ که* (mā-dām-kl) *as long as, since*, *مَبَادَا که* (mē-bādā kl) *lest*, *مَکَرِ که* (mēyēr kl) *unless*, require their verbs to be in the optative; as, *تَا که تَحْمِلِ قَالِمِه* (— — tāhāmmūlā qālmāyā) *in order that no power of endurance be left in him*; *شَايَد که مُنَهَزِمِ اُولَه لَر* (— — mūnhēzīm olālēr) *lest they be routed*; *مَادَامِ که حَيَاتَدَه اُولَه لَر* (— — hāyātdā olālēr) *since they are alive*; *مَکَرِ که کُوْزَلِ اُولَه* (— — ūylē olā) *lest it be so*; *مَکَرِ که گُوْزَلِ اُولَه* (— — gyūzēl olā) *unless he (she, it) be beautiful*.



SECTION XIII. *Syntax of the Interjection.*

Some interjections are accompanied by nouns and pronouns, some by nouns only, others have no accompaniment, and some precede verbs.

When accompanied by a noun, the noun is always in the nominative, excepting with the interjection يَازِقْ (yāzīq); as, وَآخْ بَابَامْ (vwākh bābām) *alas, my father!* أَفَرِينْ أَوْغَلَمْ (āfērīn, vulg. āfērīm oghlūm) *well done, my boy!* كِيدِي أَدْبَسِرْ (gldl èdèb-siz) *O, impudent fellow!* آيْ قَرِنْدَاشِمْ (èy qārdāshīm) *well, brother!* آمَانْ جُوجُغْمْ (āmān chōjūghūm) *O, my child!* مَرَحَبَا أَفْنِدِمْ (mèrhābā èfèndīm) *God's blessing on you, sir!* They always precede the noun. The word يَازِقْ is used in this way also, but it further permits its substantive to be put in the dative; as, يَازِقْ أَمَكِمْ (yāzīq èmèyim), يَازِقْ أَمَكِمَهْ (yāzīq èmèyilmè) *alas my trouble!* *alas for my trouble!*

When accompanied by a pronoun, except the interjection كِيدِي (gldl), the pronoun must be in the dative; as, يَازِقْ بَكَا (yāzīq bākā) *poor me!* وَآخْ سَكَا (vwākh sākā) *alas for thee!* أَفَرِينْ أَنْلَرَهْ (āfērīm ānlārā) *well done, they!* The exceptional كِيدِي is constructed with the accusative of the second person singular, which it may precede or follow; as, كِيدِي سَنِي (gldl sānl) or سَنِي كِيدِي (sānl gldl) *faugh, thou (good-for-nothing)!*

Interjections indicative of a desire for the future or regret for the past, are constructed with the conditional, aorist or past accordingly ; as, *آه كَسَمَ* (*āh gālsā*) *O that he would come !* *آه كَسَيْدِي* (*āh gālsēydl*) *O that he had come !* One of these, *آمَان*, is constructed also with the imperative, and expresses vehement desire with the affirmative, or dread with the negative ; as, *آمَان كِتْمَسَه* (*āmān gltmāsā*) *O that he go not* (by his own desire) ! *آمَان كِتْمَسُون* (*āmān gltmāsın*) *O that he go not* (if my wish prevail) !

With an imperative, *هَلَه* (*hélé*) expresses an invitation or a challenge ; as, *هَلَه كَل* (*hélé gāl*) *come along !* *هَلَه كَلْسُون* (*hélé gālsın*) *just let him only come !*

Arabic phrases are often used as interjections, generally after proper names ; as, *مَكَّة مَكْرَمَه كَرَمَهَا اللهُ تَعَالَى* (*mèkkè-l mükèrrémè, kèrrémā-hā 'llāhū tā'ālā*) *Mekka the Venerated, which may God, who be exalted, cause to be venerated !* *سُلْطَانِ غَازِي سَلِيمُ خَان مَدَّ اللهُ ظِلَالِ رَأْفَتِهِ عَلَى مَفَارِقِ الْأَنَامِ مَا تَكَرَّرَ الشُّهُورُ وَتَجَدَّدَ الْأَعْوَامُ حَضْرَتَلِي* *His Majesty, the champion of the faith, Sultan Selim Khan, the shadows of whose clemency may God spread over the crowns of the heads of mankind, so long as the months repeat themselves and the years renew themselves !*

## ADDENDUM.

IN p. 45, after line 5, as a further remark on the uses of letter و, the following rule is not without its use; viz.,—

In a few words of Persian origin only, the letter و, following a letter خ, and itself followed by a long vowel-letter ا, is suppressed and lost in the pronunciation. Thus خَوَانْ kh'ān, خَوَاهْ kh'āh, خَوَاهِشْ kh'āhlsh. The word خَوَاجَه kh'ājā, of this class, and its derivatives, خَوَاجَكَاَنْ, خَوَاجَهَلِیقْ, &c., have been corrupted in Turkish into khōjā, khōjāgyān, khōjālīq, &c. In Persian proper, a very few words beginning with خو, without a following ا, elide the و in like manner in pronouncing; but this is never observed in Turkish, unless it may be in the rhyme-words of ancient poetry. Thus the word خُوش (usually read khūsh in Persian, khōsh in Turkish) is made to rhyme with وَشْ vesh, for instance; and in consequence must then be read kh'āsh. خُود (usually khūd, Turkish khōd) is made to rhyme with بَدْ bēd; something after the manner of our poets, who make *wind* rhyme with *find*, *mind*, &c. This is what is styled وَأَوْمَعْدُولَهْ (vwāwī mā'dūlē), *deflected* و, in Persian.



## I N D E X.

- A.
- Accidence, p. 51.
- Active participles, 100, 105.
- "    "    aorist, 100—102.
- "    "    future, 100, 101.
- "    "    past, 100, 101.
- "    "    perfect, 100, 101.
- "    "    present, 100, 101.
- Active verb, 92.
- Addendum on *وَأَوْ مَعْدُونَهُ*, 193.
- Adjectival expressions, 72.
- Adjectives, 61, 68—74.
- "    Arabic, 61, 69.
- "    Persian, 68, 70—72.
- "    "    Compound, 70-2.
- "    Syntax of, 168.
- "    Turkish, 68, 69, 73-4.
- Adverbial expressions, 154.
- Adverbs, Arabic, 73.
- "    Syntax of, 182.
- "    Turkish, 73.
- Affirmative verb, 92.
- Alphabet by forms, 2.
- "    Numeral, 3.
- "    Semitic, Greek, and Latin, 3.
- Alphabet, Semitic, Greek, and Latin, Synopsis of, 4.
- Aorist active participle, 100—102.
- Aorist passive participle, 103.
- Aorist tense, 100.
- "    "    conditional, 109.
- "    "    indicative, 107.
- "    "    necessitative, 108.
- "    "    optative, 109.
- Apposition, 160.
- Arabic active participles (*nomen agentis*), 59, 61, 62.
- Arabic adjectival expressions, 72.
- "    adjectives, 61, 69.
- "    adverbs, 73.
- "    broken plurals, 55—60.
- "    chapters of derivation, 57, 62—64.
- Arabic diminutives, 60, 67.
- "    irregular plurals, 55—60.
- "    noun of instrument and receptacle, 60.
- Arabic noun of kind or manner, 60.
- "    "    place of abundance, 60.

Arabic noun of time and place, 60.

„ „ unity, 60.

Arabic ordinals, 78.

„ passive participle (*nomen patientis*), 59, 61, 62.

Arabic plurals, 55.

„ „ irregular, 55—60.

„ „ regular, 55.

Arabic quadriliteral roots, 65.

„ regular plurals, 55.

„ substantives, 53, 54.

„ trilateral roots, 56.

„ verbal nouns (*nomen verbi*), 58, 61-2.

#### B.

Brevity, Conversational, 158.

Broken(irregular)plural, 19, 55—60.

#### C.

Cardinal numbers, 74-7.

Categories of verbs, 99.

„ Complex, 99, 119.

Category, First Complex, 119, 120.

„ Second „ 119, 125.

„ Simple, of verbs, 99, 119.

„ Third Complex, 119, 129.

Causal gerund-like locution, 113.

Causative verb, 93.

„ „ Compound, 150.

Closed syllable, 27.

Combined (true Turkish) Conjugation, 133.

Complex Categories of Verb, 99, 119.

Complex fractional numbers, 80.

Compound Persian Adjectives, 70.

„ Verbs, 148.

„ „ Active, 149.

„ „ Intransitive, 149.

„ „ Passive, 149.

„ „ Transitive, 149.

Conditional mood, 100.

Conjugation, 99.

„ Combined (true Turkish), 133.

Conjugational root, 96.

Conjunctions, 156.

„ Syntax of, 185.

Consonants, 15.

„ Hard, 47.

„ Movent, 31, 32 *ter*, 33 *ter*.

Consonants, Neutral, 48.

„ Quiescent, 27.

„ Soft, 47.

Conversational brevity, 158.

#### D.

Dates of documents, &c., 81.

Declination of Demonstratives, 88.

„ Interrogatives, 89.

„ Nouns, 51.

„ Personal Pronouns,

82.

Defective Verbs, 98.

Demonstrative Pronouns, 88.

Derivation of Verbs, 92.

Determinate Verb, 93.



Digits, 81.  
 Diminutive, Arabic, 67.  
     " Persian, 67.  
     " Turkish, 66, 73.  
 Directing vowels, 27.  
 Distributive numbers, 78.  
 Documents, Dates of, 81.  
 Dominant (letter or vowel), 48, 49.  
 Dubitative Verb, 141.  
     " " Compound, 150.

## E.

Esere, 16 *bis*.  
 Etymology, 51.  
 Euphony, 15, 48—50.  
 Expressions, Adjectival, 72.  
     " Adverbial, 154.

## F.

Facile Verbs, 141.  
     " " Compound, 150.  
 First Complex Category of Verbs,  
     119, 120.  
 First Person Plural of Verbs, 116.  
     " " " Pronoun, 82.  
     " " Singular of Verbs, 115.  
     " " " Pronoun, 82.  
 Formation of the Tenses, 106.  
 Fractional numbers, 79.  
 Future Active Participle, 100, 101.  
     " Passive " , 103.  
     " Tense, Imperative, 100.  
     " " Indicative, 108.  
     " " Past, 100.  
     " Verbal Noun, 104.

## G.

Gender, 51.  
 General Verbal Noun, 103.  
 Gerund, Fifth, 112.  
     " First, 111.  
     " Fourth, 112.  
     " Second, 111.  
     " Seventh, 112.  
     " Sixth, 112.  
     " Third, 112.  
 Gerund-like locutions, 110, 111.  
     " " Causal, 110,  
     113.  
 Gerund-like locutions of propor-  
     tion, 113.  
 Gerund-like locutions of time, 111,  
     114, 115.  
 Gerund-like location of time, Fifth,  
     115.  
     " " " First, 114.  
     " " " Fourth, 114.  
     " " " Second, 114.  
     " " " Sixth, 115.  
     " " " Third, 114.  
 Gerunds, 99, 110.  
     " Syntax of, 181.

## H.

Half, 79.  
 Hard consonants, 47.  
     " vowels, 48.  
 Hemze, 10, 30—33.  
     " omitted, 24.  
     " Radical, 30, 31.  
     " Servile, 30, 31.

## I.

- Identity of Semitic, Greek, and  
Latin Alphabets, 3.  
Imperative Mood, 100.  
Imperfect Tense, 100.  
    "    "    indicative, 107.  
Impotential Verbs, 92.  
    "    "    Compound, 150  
Indefinite numerals (pronouns), 80.  
Indeterminate Verbs, 93.  
Indicative Mood, 100.  
Infinitive Mood, 100.  
    "    "    Syntax of, 179.  
Interjections, 157.  
    "    "    Syntax of, 191.  
Interrogation, 151.  
Interrogative Pronouns, 89.  
    "    "    Verbs, 151.  
Intransitive Verbs, 92.  
    "    "    Compound, 149.

## J.

- Junctional Letters, 9.

## L.

- Letters, 1  
    "    Junctional, 9.  
    "    Names of the, 1, 10—14.  
    "    Non-Junctional, 9.  
    "    of prolongation, 17.  
    "    of the Alphabet, 1.  
    "    Radical, 30, 31.  
    "    Reduplicated, 29, 30, 32.  
    "    Servile, 28, 30, 31.  
Locutions, Gerund-like, 110—115.

## M.

- Medd, 24—26.  
Months, Signs for, in dates, 81.  
Moods, 100.  
Mood, Conditional, 100.  
    "    Imperative, "  
    "    Indicative, "  
    "    Infinitive, "  
    "    Necessitative, "  
    "    Optative, "

## N.

- Names of Letters, 1, 10—14.  
Necessitative Mood, 100.  
Negative Verbs, 92.  
    "    "    Compound, 150.  
Neuter Verbs, 97.  
Neutral consonants, 48.  
    "    "    vowels, 48.  
Noun Adjective, 68.  
    "    "    Arabic, 68, 69.  
    "    "    Persian, 68.  
    "    "    "    Compound, 70.  
    "    "    Syntax of, 168.  
    "    "    Turkish, 68.  
    "    Substantive, 51.  
    "    "    Syntax of, 161.  
    "    Verbal, 99, 103-5.  
    "    "    Syntax of, 179.  
Numbers and persons of verbs, 115.  
Numeral Alphabet, 3.  
Numerals, 74—82.  
    "    Cardinal, Arabic, 74-7.  
    "    "    Persian, 74-7.

Numerals, Cardinal, Turkish, 74-6.

- „ Distributive, 78.
- „ Fractional, 79.
- „ Indefinite, 80.
- „ Interrogative, 76.
- „ Ordinal, Arabic, 78.
- „ „ Persian, 78.
- „ „ Turkish, 77.
- „ Turkish Peculiar, 80.
- „ Syntax of, 170.

### O.

Open syllables, 27.

Optative Mood, 100.

Orthographic signs, 15, 28—33.

### P.

Participles, 100.

- „ Active, 100—105.
- „ „ Aorist, 100, 102.
- „ „ Future, 100, 101.
- „ „ General, 100.
- „ „ Past, 100, 101.
- „ „ Perfect, 100, 101.
- „ „ Present, 100-2.
- „ Passive, 101, 103, 105.
- „ „ Aorist, 103.
- „ „ Future, 103.
- „ Syntax of, 178.
- „ Twenty-eight, 101.

Passive participles, 101, 103, 105.

- „ verb, 92.
- „ „ Compound, 149.
- „ verbal adjective, 104.

Past active participle, 100, 101.

Past future tense, 100.

Past future indicative, 100, 108.

Past tense, 100.

„ „ indicative, 107.

Peculiar Turkish numerals, 80.

„ „ relatives, 91.

Perfect active participle, 100, 101.

Perfect tense, 100.

„ indicative, 107.

„ verbal noun, 103.

Permissive verbs, 93.

Persian adjectives, 68, 70-2.

„ „ Compound, 70-2.

Persian diminutive, 67.

„ letters, 2, 13.

„ plurals of nouns, 54.

„ substantives, 53, 54.

Personal pronouns, 82.

Phonetic values of letters, 15, 34—50.

Phonetic values of vowels, 17, 48—50

Pluperfect tense, 100.

„ „ indicative, 108.

Plural of nouns, Arabic irregular, 55—60.

Plural of nouns, Arabic regular, 55.

„ „ Persian, 54.

„ „ Turkish, 51.

Possessive pronouns, 83-8.

Potential verbs, 141-2.

„ „ Compound, 150.

Precision in writing, 158.

Prepositions, 156.

„ Syntax of, 184.

Present active participle, 100-2.

„ tense, 100.

„ „ indicative, 106.

Present tense infinitive, 110.  
 „ verbal noun, 103.  
 Prolongation, Letters of, 17.  
 Pronoun, 82.  
 „ Demonstrative, 88.  
 „ Indefinite (numeral), 80.  
 „ Interrogative, 89.  
 „ Personal, 82.  
 „ Possessive, 83—88.  
 „ Relative, 90.  
 „ „ Peculiar Turkish, 91.

## Q.

Q derived from ق, ط, 4, 8, 40.  
 Quiescence, sign of, 19, 28.

## R.

Radical letters, 30, 31.  
 Reciprocal verbs, 93.  
 „ „ Compound, 150.  
 Reduplicated letters, 29, 30, 32.  
 Reflexive verb, 98.  
 Root of conjugation, 96.  
 „ tense, 106, 115.

## S.

Second Complex Category of Verbs,  
 119, 125.  
 Second person plural, 118.  
 „ „ singular, 116.  
 Servile letters, 28, 30, 31.  
 Sign of quiescence, 19, 28.  
 „ reduplication, 24—26.

Signs for the months in dates, 81.  
 Simple Category of Verbs, 99—119.  
 „ verbs, 93.  
 Soft consonants and vowels, 48.  
 Substantives, 51.  
 „ Syntax of, 161.  
 Syllabary, No. 1 and No. 2, 17.  
 Syllables, closed and open, 27.  
 Synopsis of Semitic, Greek and  
 Latin Alphabets, 4.  
 Syntax, 158.

„ of adjectives, 168.  
 „ of adverbs, 182.  
 „ of conjunctions, 185.  
 „ of gerunds, 181.  
 „ of infinitive, 179.  
 „ of interjections, 191.  
 „ of numerals, 170.  
 „ of participles, 178.  
 „ of prepositions, 184.  
 „ of pronouns, 173.  
 „ of substantives, 161.  
 „ of verbal nouns, 179.  
 „ of verbs, 174.

## T.

Table of verbal derivation, 94-5.  
 Tenses, 100, 104, 106—110.  
 „ Aorist conditional, 109.  
 „ „ indicative, 107.  
 „ „ necessitative, 108.  
 „ „ optative, 109.  
 „ Formation of the, 106.  
 „ Future imperative, 100.  
 „ „ indicative, 108.

Tense, Imperfect, 100.

„ „ indicative, 107.

„ Past, 100.

„ „ indicative, 107.

„ Future, 100.

„ „ indicative, 108.

„ Perfect, 100.

„ „ indicative, 108.

„ Pluperfect, 100.

„ „ indicative, 108.

„ Present, 100.

„ „ indicative, 106.

„ „ infinitive, 110.

Teshdid, 32.

Third Complex Category of Verbs,  
119, 129.

Third person plural, 118.

„ „ singular, 106.

Transitive verb, 92.

Transliteration, 15, 17, 34—47.

Turkish adjectives, 68, 69, 73-4.

„ adverbs, 73.

„ cardinal numbers, 74-6.

„ „ interrogative, 76.

„ conjugation (combined),  
133.

Turkish ordinal numbers, 77.

„ plural of substantives, 51.

„ substantives, 51.

„ true combined conjugation,  
133.

## U.

Ustun, 16.

Uturu, 16.

## V.

Values of letters, 15—50.

Verb, 92—153.

„ Active, 92.

„ Affirmative, 92.

„ Auxiliary, 149.

„ Causative, 93.

„ „ Compound, 150.

„ Combined conjugation of,  
133.

„ Complex Categories of, 99—  
133.

Verb, Complex Category of, First,  
119, 120.

Verb, Complex Category of, Second,  
119, 125.

Verb, Complex Category of, Third,  
119, 129.

Verb, Compound, 148.

„ Conjugation of, 99.

„ Defective, 98.

„ Determinate, 93.

„ Dubitative, 141.

„ „ Compound, 150.

„ Facile, 141.

„ „ Compound, 150.

„ Impotential, 92.

„ „ Compound, 150.

„ Indeterminate, 93.

„ Interrogative, 151.

„ Intransitive, 92.

„ „ Compound, 149.

„ Negative, 92.

„ „ Compound, 150.

„ Neuter, 97.

Verb of Existence, Non-Existence,

Presence, or Absence, 147.

Verb, Passive, 92.

„ „ Compound, 149.

„ Permissive, 93.

„ Potential, 141-2.

„ „ Compound, 150.

„ Reciprocal, 93.

„ „ Compound, 150.

„ Reflexive, 98.

„ Simple, 93.

„ Simple Category of, 99-119.

„ Substantive, 144.

„ Syntax of, 174.

„ Transitive, 92.

„ „ Compound, 149.

Verbal adjective passive, 104.

„ derivation, 92.

„ „ Table of, 94.

„ Nouns, 99, 103-105.

Verbal Nouns, Future, 104.

„ „ General, 103.

„ „ Perfect, 103.

„ „ Present, 103.

„ „ Syntax of, 179.

Vowels, 15.

„ Directing, 27.

„ Hard, 48.

„ Letters, 15, 16.

„ Long, 17, *bis*.

„ Neutral, 48.

„ Points, 15, 16.

„ Short, 16, 17.

„ Soft, 48.

W.

Written digits, 81.

„ signs for months in dates,  
81.

ا as a vowel, 17, 23, 26, 27.

„ numeral, 4.

أ „ consonant, 23.

آ 24.

ا 25.

أَبَدَ 2.

أَسْتَفْعَلَ بَابِي 57.

أَسْرَهُ 16.

اِفْتَعَلَ بَابِي 57.

اِفْعَالَ بَابِي 57.

اِفْعِلَالٌ بَابِي 57.

اِفْعِنَلَالٌ بَابِي 57.

اِفْعِنَلِي بَابِي 57.



57. اِفْعَوْلُ بَائِي.

57. اِفْعِيْعَالُ بَائِي.

57. اِفْعِيْلَالُ بَائِي.

164. اَفَنْدِي.

2. اَلْفُ بَه.

10. اَلْفِ مَقْصُورَه.

10. اَلْفِ مَمْدُودَه.

57. اِنْفِعَالُ بَائِي.

82. اَنْلَر.

82, 88. اُو.

88. اُوْبِر.

16. اُوْتُورُو.

16. اُوْسْتُون.

82, 88. اُول.

88. اُولِير.

106. اِيْدِي.

20. اِيْكِ اَسْرَه.

20. اِيْكِ اُوْتُورُو.

20. اِيْكِ اُوْسْتُون.

57. (pl. اَبْوَابُ) بَاب.

82. بَز.

82. بَزْلَر.

164. بَلَك.

82. بَن.

88. بُو.

57. تَفَاعُلُ بَائِي.

57. تَفَعُّلُ بَائِي.

57. تَفْعِيلُ بَائِي.

56. ثُلَاثِي.

56. ثُنَائِي.

19, 28. جَزَم.

167. جَنَاب.

17. (حَرْفِ مَدّ sing.) حُرُوفِ مَدّ.

9. ... مُنْفَصِلَه.

9. ... وَصْلِيَه.

167. حَضْرَت.

56. خُمَاسِي.

146, 160, 175. دِر.

رَبَاعِي 56.

سُدَّاسِي 56.

سَنَ , سِزْلَر , سِزَر 82.

سُلْطَان 164.

شَدَّ 29.

شَوْل 88, شُو 89.

صُوى , صُو 53.

فَعَلَ 56, 57.

فَعْلَال 57.

فَعَلَ بَابِي 57.

فَعَلَّه بَابِي 57.

ق, Q, original of our letter  
Q q, 4, 8, 40.

قَاجِجِي (whence قَاج) 76.

كَ as a conjunction, 187—190.

قَنَغِي 90.

كِيَم 89.

مَد 24—26.

مَرْسُوم (also مَسْفُور , مَزْبُور , مَذْكُور)  
161.

مُومَى إِلِيَه , مُشَار إِلِيَه 161.

مُولَا 164.

مِي 151—153.

نَه دُرْلُو , نَه , نَقْدَر 90.

consonant, 23; vowel, 17, 20.

وَار 147.

وَإِوَمَعْدُولَه in *Addendum*, 193.

consonant, 15, 19; vowel,  
19—23; numeral, 4.

هَمَزَه 10, 30—33.

consonant, 15; vowel, 17;  
numeral, 4.

pronounced as | when final,  
10.

يُوق 147.

ـ 10.

ـ 16.

ـ 20.

ـ 16.

ـ 20.

ـ 16.

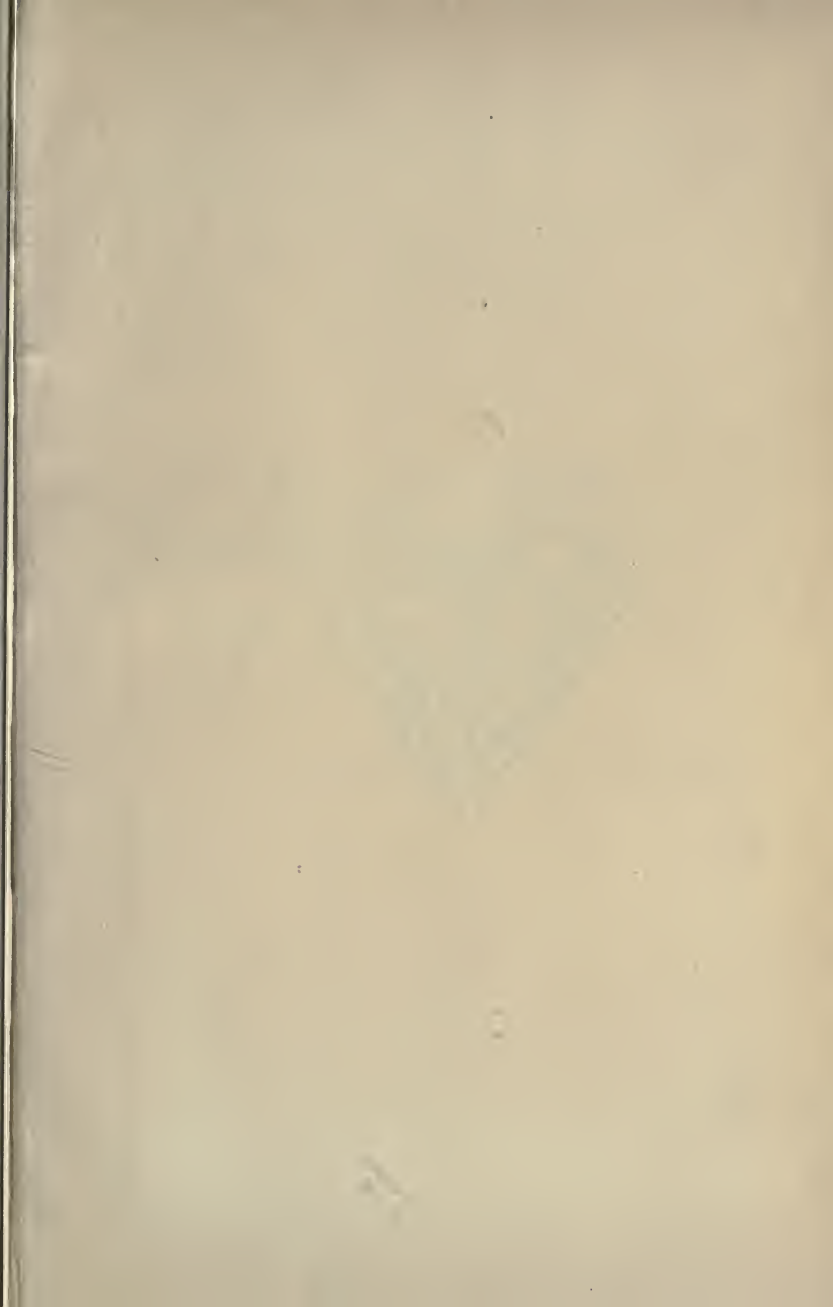
ـ 20.

ـ 28.

ـ 29.

ـ 30—33.

ـ 166.





**PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET**

---

**UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY**

---

